AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

STATUTORY DECLARATION

I, Kari Alitalo, a Research Professor of the Finnish Academy of Sciences, at The Molecular/Cancer Biology Laboratory, Biomedicum Helsinki, P.O.B. 63 (Haartmaninkatu 8) 00014 University of Helsinki, Finland; do solemnly and sincerely declare as follows:

Introduction

1.1 In February 2000 I executed a first statutory declaration (hereinafter referred to as "OKA1" (Opponents, Kari Alitalo, 1st Declaration)) to provide experimental evidence in support of the opposition filed by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research ("Ludwig Institute") to the issuance of a patent to Human Genome Sciences, Inc., ("HGS") based on HGS's Australian Patent Application No. 696764 ("the opposed application"). That first declaration included a brief summary of my scientific credentials and an introduction in which I set forth some conventional terminology and relevant background information regarding VEGF-C and signal peptides.

1.2 The patent applicant HGS subsequently filed declarations from three scientists, Jennifer Ruth Gamble (hereinafter "AJG1"), Nicholas Kim Hayward ("ANH1"), and Stuart A. Aaronson ("ASA1"). Those declarations take issue with aspects of my first declaration. I note at the outset that HGS filed three additional declarations from three additional scientists (John Stanley Mattick ("AJM1"), Susan Power ("ASP1"), and Tom Rapoport

("ATR1")) that neglected to comment directly on the issues raised and/or experiments described in my first declaration. Therefore, my initial comments in response to HGS's declarations will be directed principally to the criticisms raised in AJG1, ANH1, and ASA1.

1.3 Second, Ludwig Institute also asked me to provide information regarding sequencing analysis of Human Genome Science's VEGF2[1] clone, deposited with the ATCC and referred to in the opposed application (as amended). That sequence analysis will provide helpful information for replying to issues raised by all of the declarants, but especially Dr. Power.

1.4 Third, Ludwig Institute asked me to comment on the relevance of certain experiments that Human Genome Sciences asked Dr. Susan Power to perform, and that were summarized in ASP1.

Reply to criticisms of my initial experiments and first declaration.

A. Initial observations about the weight of evidence.

2.1 I have reviewed all of the comments made in response to my first declaration. The criticisms regarding the experimental design and the data obtained as a result of my expression studies do not cause me to change my opinion as set forth in my first declaration. I note that AJG1, ANH1, and ASA1 fail to offer scientific data in support of their criticisms and fail to demonstrate that expression of VEGF2 according to the opposed application is feasible. Instead, the declarations recite potential shortcomings in the express teachings of the opposed application and potential remedies thereof (AJG1 at 6.5; ANH1 at 3.13-3.20; ASA1 at 16). If an objective scientist were to study all of the experimental evidence initially presented by the opponent and HGS in this opposition, the scientist would conclude that there is one set of experiments (reported in my first declaration) that VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application is not expressed and

---

[1] I note that the body of the specification of the opposed application refers to "VEGF2" whilst the claims and the HGS declarants refer to "VEGF-2". I assume that those terms are used in the opposed application and by the HGS declarants to refer to the same thing.

secreted, and no evidence whatsoever to the contrary. In any event, the further experiments conducted in my laboratory that I describe below provide still more evidence in support of the opponent's position.

2.2 Dr. Gamble criticized my first declaration by observing that I already knew, before conducting any experiments, that the 350 amino acid VEGF2 did not have a proper signal sequence. (AJG1 at 7.41.) She is correct that by 1996 we had evidence that the relevant gene encoded a protein of 419 amino acids (not 350) and that the working signal peptide was from the part that was "missing" from the 350 amino acid VEGF2 sequence in the opposed application. If she thinks that this prior knowledge should have been used in my experimental design or that failure to do so represents a fault in the experimental design, then she misunderstands the purpose for my experiments. It is my understanding that the purpose of the opposition proceeding is to evaluate the merits of the HGS patent application, from the vantage point of early 1994, when it was filed. What I or anybody else knew in 1996 from my independent research should not confuse that inquiry, and certainly should not be credited to HGS. In fact the opposed patent application teaches a 350 amino acid VEGF2 and says that this sequence consists of a leader sequence of 24 amino acids and a mature sequence of about 326 amino acids. Since the patent application contained no experimental evidence whatsoever to support that assertion, I ran a set of experiments to see if it was correct or incorrect. The experiments showed that the patent application was wrong. Additional experiments, reported below, confirm that the opposed application was wrong.

B. My initial experiments were patterned from HGS's own teachings.

2.3 As explained in detail by Dr. Rogers in his first declaration, the opposed application taught an incomplete VEGF2 sequence lacking N-terminal amino acid sequences from the VEGF2 cDNA and protein. HGS filed a second application (**Document D44,** hereinafter referred to as "HGS II") in June 1995, which is not the subject of this opposition, but which is relevant because it pertains to a "full length" VEGF2 that is not missing the N-terminal sequences. Example 3 in HGS II provides a method for the expression of recombinant VEGF2 in COS cells. With the exception of the cell line, I generally followed the experimental design taught in Example 3 of HGS II in my first declaration. (For example, HGS II teaches to express VEGF2 with an HA tag fused in-frame to the 3'

end of VEGF2.) I used 293T cells for my expression studies since it was known at the time of the experimentation that the 293T cell line allows greater proteolytic processing and thus enables VEGF-C precursors a greater opportunity to become secreted. This phenomenon was, in fact, pointed out in each of the declarations (AJG1, Paragraph 7.45; ANH1, Paragraph 5.5; ASA1, Paragraph 10). If anything, the criticisms by Drs. Gamble, Hayward, and Aaronson of the experimental design and evidence supplied in my first declaration provides evidence that HGS II fails to teach a viable method for generating the VEGF2 protein. The Patent Office might wish to forward the criticisms provided by HGS's experts to the appropriate examiner handling the HGS II application in Australia.

2.4 Dr. Gamble, Dr. Hayward, and Dr. Aaronson all criticized my initial work for using an HA tag to make the VEGF2 construct. (See, e.g., AJG1 at 7.43 - 7.44; ANH1 at 5.3-5.4 and 5.6-5.10; and ASA1 at 7 - 13.) Use of the HA tag was allegedly taught in the opposed application (see, e.g., page 8, second full paragraph), and, as explained above, was explicitly taught in an Example of HGS II. If the HA tag causes any problems, then it reflects another defect in the teachings of the application and the teachings of HGS II. And, none of the scientists appears to believe that an HA tag causes any problems, according to other parts of their declarations. (See AJG1 at 7.45; ANH1 at 5.5; and ASA1 at 10.) In any event, I repeated the experiments for this declaration and used a VEGF-C antibody to precipitate both VEGF-C and VEGF2, thus answering the criticisms of Drs. Gamble and Hayward. As reported below, the VEGF2 taught in the patent application still was not expressed and secreted.

C. **HGS Patent Application 714484 is irrelevant**

2.5 In this paragraph I respond to similar allegations of Drs. Gamble, Hayward, and Aaronson, in which all three declarants attempt to obfuscate the problems in the opposed patent application by relying on information in a totally different patent application:

2.5.1 Dr. Gamble expressed the following opinion at AJG1 at 7.45:

> In HGS' Australian Patent No. 714484, a monoclonal anti-HA antibody was used to successfully immunoprecipitate VEGF-2 which had been modified to contain an HA epitope at its carboxy terminus. It is unclear

> to me why Dr. Alitalo apparently was not able to isolate VEGF-2 using a His tag at the C-terminus. One explanation may be the type of mammalian cell line used in the experiments . . . .

2.5.2 Dr. Hayward made similar declarations at ANH1 at 5.5:

> HGS scientists have reported the successful isolation of a modified VEGF-2 protein containing an HA tag at its carboxy terminus using a monoclonal anti-HA antibody. (See, HGS Australian Patent No. 714484 and Hu JS et al (1997) FASEB J May;11(6):498-504). These studies were conducted in COS cells, whereas the experiments set forth in Dr. Alitalo's declaration were conducted in 293T cells . . .

2.5.3 Dr. Aaronson made similar declarations at ASA1 at 10:

> The HGS scientists have reported the successful isolation of a modified VEGF-2 protein containing an HA-tag at its carboxy terminus using a monoclonal antibody to HA (See, HGS Australian Patent No. 714484 and Hu J.S. et al. FASEB J. 11 (6): 498-504). However, the HGS studies were conducted in COS cells, whereas Dr. Alitalo's experiments were conducted in 293T cells . . . .

2.6 As Drs. Gamble, Hayward, and Aaronson all know, the HGS patent document 714484 to which they refer is not the opposed application. Instead, document 714484 is the Australian version of the second application (HGS II) that HGS filed after they realized that the VEGF2 in the opposed application was incomplete.[2] Even if the HA tag was used successfully in an experiment in HGS II, that experiment related to 419 amino acid VEGF2, and not to the merits of the opposed application, which taught an incomplete VEGF2. The results reported in my first declaration for VEGF2 were negative because cells cannot express and secrete the incomplete VEGF2 molecule as taught by HGS. Dr.

---

[2] The 1997 publication referred to by Dr. Hayward and Dr. Aaronson was published even later than HGS II was filed, and also relates to the 419 amino acid VEGF2.

Gamble and Dr. Hayward's speculation about cell lines is wrong, as shown in the additional experiments that I describe below.

D. Additional experiments to prove that VEGF2 cannot be expressed and secreted.

3.1 Ludwig Institute asked me to design and perform further protein expression studies that would address concerns raised by AJG1, ANH1, and ASA1 directed towards my first declaration. The following analyses of VEGF2 expression, proteolytic processing, and secretion profiles provide further support that the opposed application fails to teach a VEGF2 that can be expressed and secreted.

1. Background/Review

3.2. VEGF2 taught by HGS in the opposed application corresponds approximately to amino acids 70 to 419 of the human VEGF-C prepro-peptide. Like most complete protein coding sequences, the VEGF2 taught in the opposed application starts with a methionine. However, as analyzed by the SignalP program at Center for Biological Sequence Analysis, The Technical University of Denmark, this protein does not seem to contain a signal sequence (See OKA1 at 7.1). Among the approximately 70 amino acids that are missing from the N-terminus of VEGF2 in the opposed application are the initial approximately 31 amino acid residues that represent the VEGF-C signal sequence, responsible for directing secretion of the polypeptide.

2. Experimental Procedure

3.3 Cells and Plasmids:

3.3.1 A principal criticism from the HGS experts was the use of the 293T cell line rather than the COS cell line. Of course, nothing in the opposed application teaches that 293T cells should not be used.[3] However, in order to fairly evaluate the assertions

---

[3] Contrary to anything stated or implied by the HGS declarants, the opposed application has no working examples involving COS cells or other cells. The opposed application mentions COS cells among a list of exemplary cell lines at page 15.

made by HGS's experts, I performed parallel expression studies in both cell lines for this declaration. 293T and COS7 cells were grown in DMEM supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, glutamine and penicillin/streptomycin.

3.3.2 The polymerase chain reaction (PCR) was employed to construct a DNA fragment that corresponded to amino acids 70 to 419 of prepro-VEGF-C. Amino acid residues 70 to 419 of prepro-VEGF-C corresponds essentially to the full length sequence of the VEGF2 polypeptide described in the opposed application. Nucleotides 559 to 1608 of a VEGF-C cDNA (GenBank accession number X94216) were PCR amplified with the primers 5'-CGCGGATCCATGACTGTACTCTACCCA-3' containing a BamHI site and 5'-CGCTCTAGATCAAGCGTAGTCTGGGACGTCGTATGGGTACTCGAGGCTCATTTGTGGTCT-3' containing a XhoI site, HA-tag, a stop codon and a XbaI site. The PCR-amplified DNA was cloned into vector pcDNA1(Amp) (Invitrogen) and the resultant vector was designated as VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1.

3.3.3 Also constructed was a VEGF-C/pcDNA1 construct to serve as a positive control for expression and secretion studies. The VEGF-C/pcDNA1 construct contains the full length (419 codon) cDNA sequence of VEGF-C.

3.4 Metabolic labelling:

3.4.1 To address the differences in expression, proteolytic processing, and secretion among cell lines, both 293T and COS cells were selected for the expression study. 293T or COS7 cells were transfected with either VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1 or VEGF-C/pcDNA1. "Mock" transfected cells (transfected with "empty" vector) were used as a negative control.

3.4.2 Forty-eight hours after transfecting the cells with one or the other plasmid, the cells were washed twice with phosphate-buffered saline solution (PBS) and metabolically labeled in MEM medium containing 100 mCi/ml ^{35}S-methionine and ^{35}S-cysteine (Promix, Amersham) over night. The radioactive amino acids (^{35}S-methionine and ^{35}S-cysteine) were introduced into the cell growth medium to assist in the identification of expressed polypeptides in the extracellular medium

and in cell lysates. The cells used would incorporate these radioactive amino acids into nascent polypeptides during protein biosynthesis. The cell growth media after this overnight growth period is referred to as "conditioned media" because it has been conditioned by whatever polypeptides and other molecules the cells have secreted. After the overnight growth period, the conditioned media was harvested and cleared by centrifugation.

3.4.3 In addition to collecting the extracellular media to assay secreted proteins, the cells were lysed in order to assay proteins that were synthesized in the cells but not secreted. After washing for three times with ice cold PBS, the cells were lysed in ice cold RIPA-buffer (150 mM NaCl, 1% NP-40, 0.5% DOC, 0.1% SDS, 50 mM Tris) supplemented with 0.01 U/ml aprotinin, 1 mg/ml leupeptin and 1 mM PMSF, and the lysate was cleared by centrifugation. These latter ingredients were protease inhibitors, to prevent proteolytic degradation of proteins following the lysis step.

3.5 Immunoprecipitation:

Immunoprecipitation experiments were conducted to identify the presence of the various VEGF-C or VEGF2 polypeptides in the conditioned media or cell lysates.

3.5.1 For immunoprecipitation, the conditioned media from cell cultures were supplemented with BSA and Tween 20 to final concentrations of 0.5% and 0.02%, respectively. The different VEGF-C or VEGF2 peptides were immunoprecipitated with polyclonal antibodies raised against a synthetic peptide corresponding to amino acid residues 104-120 of the VEGF-C prepro-peptide (Antisera 882, reported in Document D71, Joukov *et al.*, 1997) at 4°C overnight. As an additional check for the presence of VEGF2 peptides, the conditioned medium and the lysates of the VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1 or mock transfected COS7 cells were also immunoprecipitated with 1 mg/ml monoclonal anti-HA-antibodies (H.A.11, BabCO).

3.5.2 The immunocomplexes were then precipitated with protein A-Sepharose and washed 2-3 times with 1 X binding buffer (0.5% BSA, 0.02% Tween20 in PBS)

and once with PBS at 4°C. The proteins were analyzed by SDS-PAGE in a 12.5% gel under reducing conditions.

3. Experimental Results

3.6 The immunoprecipitated proteins were analyzed by SDS-PAGE on a 12.5% gel under reducing conditions. An autoradiogram of the SDS-PAGE analyses is attached hereto as Exhibit 1.

3.6.1 293T cells (A) or COS7 cells (B and C) were transfected with expression vectors coding for VEGF2 (ie., VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1) or VEGF-C (ie., VEGF-C/pcDNA1). When 293T or COS7 cells are transfected with the VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1 construct, no VEGF2 protein can be detected in the conditioned medium (Exhibit 1, panel A and B, lane 1). These lanes look very much like the "mock" transfected controls in lane 3. Several polypeptides expressed from the VEGF-C/pcDNA1 construct were identified (Exhibit 1, panel A and B, lane 2). The dark band of approximately 30kDa corresponds to a processed form of VEGF-C in which the C-terminal propeptide has been cleaved off. The approximately 21kDa band represents the fully processed form of VEGF-C from which both N- and C-terminal propeptides have been removed. As previously reported, the processing of VEGF-C was less efficient in COS7 cells (Exhibit 1, panel B, lane 2) than in 293T cells (Exhibit 1, panel A, lane 2) (See **Document D71**, Joukov *et al., EMBO J., 16*: 38998-3911(1997)).

3.6.2 The conditioned media and the cell lysates of the COS7 cells transfected with VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1 construct or empty vector ("mock") were also subjected to immunoprecipitation with monoclonal anti-HA antibodies, but no VEGF2 polypeptides could be detected when the immunoprecipitates were analysed by SDS-PAGE (Exhibit 1, panel C).

4. Conclusions

3.7 VEGF-2 as taught in the opposed application cannot be produced as an expressed and secreted protein. This is evident from the inability of VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application to be immunoprecipitated from conditioned media of either COS cells or 293T

cells. Taking into consideration what is now known about the gene corresponding to VEGF2, it is clear that one reason for this defect is that VEGF2 taught in the opposed application lacks a signal peptide, so it is not secreted. The experiments reported herein also rebut the inference by Dr Rapoport (ATR1 at 15) that residues 70-419 of VEGF2 provide sufficient information for expression, proper processing and secretion.

3.8 We now know that when cells express the full length prepro-VEGF-C, they secrete the resultant protein, which is proteolytically processed. This observation was confirmed by these experiments: as expected, VEGF-C protein products are readily detected in conditioned media from both 293T and COS7 cell lines that were transfected with the full length VEGF-C construct.

3.9 Even though VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application lacks a signal peptide to direct its secretion, we now know that VEGF2 is not really an intracellular protein, either. Since VEGF2 is not a normal intracellular protein, it is likely rapidly degraded in cells, if the truncated protein is synthesized at all. Ineffective production and rapid degradation are two possible explanations why no VEGF2 peptides were detectable in cell lysates of cultured cells transfected with VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1.

3.10 The results of these experiments completely confirm and validate the experiments described in my first declaration, namely, that the 350 amino acid VEGF2 taught by HGS in the opposed application cannot be expressed and secreted as described in the opposed application because it lacks a true signal peptide.

3.11 The results of these experiments eliminate any criticism that the cell lines used for expression influenced the results. VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application cannot be expressed and secreted in either COS cells or 293T cells, whereas full length prepro-VEGF-C can be expressed and secreted in either cell type.

3.12 The results of these experiments eliminate any criticism that the antibody used for identification of polypeptides affected results, because an identical antisera was used for VEGF2 and VEGF-C. The polyclonal antisera raised against amino acids 104-120 of prepro-VEGF-C would have recognized either polypeptide (if it were present) because the recognition sequence for the antisera is present in both the VEGF-C and the VEGF2

sequence. (The results with the anti-HA tag antibody serve only to confirm that VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application is defective for expression and secretion.)

Sequencing the VEGF2 clone that HGS deposited with the ATCC

4.1 The opposed application was originally filed with a blank reference to a deposit with the American Type Culture Collection, which HGS eventually amended to specify ATCC Accession Number 75698, deposited 4 March 1994. (See page 5.) The application also states that the sequence of the polynucleotides contained in the deposited materials are controlling in the event of any conflict with the description of the sequence in the application. (See page 9.) Many of HGS's declarants have made representations concerning what the HGS application would allegedly have taught them, and the nature of the deposited clone is important for assessing the validity of their declarations, as I discuss below and as Drs. Rogers and Ballard also discuss.

4.2 My laboratory obtained a sample of ATCC clone 75698 directly from the ATCC. I attach hereto as Exhibit 2 a copy of original paperwork from the ATCC that accompanied the clone that was shipped to me. My laboratory sequenced the clone using standard laboratory techniques.

4.3 The VEGF2 sequence of ATCC clone 75698 begins as follows . . . .

```
          10                  30                  50
ggcacgagcAGAGAACAGGCCAACCTCAACTCAAGGACAGAAGAGACTATAAAATTTGCT
          R  E  Q  A  N  L  N  S  R  T  E  E  T  I  K  F  A
```

I have distinguished the parts of the clone that do not correspond with VEGF2 sequence using lower case letters. (This sequence presumably corresponds to sequence from the cloning vector in which the VEGF2 cDNA was inserted when deposited with the ATCC). A comparison between the sequence of the deposit and the VEGF2 sequence in Figure 1 of the opposed patent application shows that the deposited VEGF2 begins with nucleotide 142 or 143 in Figure 1. The first VEGF2 amino acids encoded by the deposited VEGF2 clone are REQANL . . . ., i.e., the clone begins with position 25 of the approximately 350 amino acid VEGF2 in the patent application. In other words, the HGS scientists deposited a cDNA that contained only *the mature* (as taught in the opposed application) VEGF2 of about 326 codons, as taught in the opposed application. The HGS scientists failed to deposit a VEGF2 containing the first approximately 24 codons, which they taught were the leader sequence of VEGF2. (And, compared to the true 419 amino acid VEGF2 taught in the HGS II application, above 93 amino acids are missing from the deposit.)

Reply to Susan Power's Declaration

5.1 Perhaps in response to my first declaration in which I demonstrated that VEGF2 cannot be expressed and secreted as taught in the opposed application, HGS filed a declaration of Susan Power (ASP1) in which she describes some expression experiments of her own. Other HGS declarants speak approvingly of Dr. Power's experiments. (See, e.g., ASA1 at 15 - 22.) This section of my declaration provides an analysis of Dr. Power's experimental work as it relates to the opposed application.

5.2 Dr. Power describes her instructions from HGS as follows: "The Patent Attorneys for Human Genome Sciences (HGS) requested that I perform the following experiments in order to determine whether the 350 amino acid form of VEGF-2 (corresponding to residues 70 to 419 of the 419 amino acid form of VEGF-2) fused in frame with a heterologous signal sequence would result in the expression and secretion of the protein from eukaryotic cells." ASP1 at 2. She was not instructed to repeat any particular teachings in the opposed application, or to use materials or methods described in the application.

5.3 The experiments that HGS asked Dr. Powers to perform may be an interesting scientific curiosity, but they have nothing to do with the teachings in the opposed patent

application. The opposed application teaches the reader that the VEGF2 of about 350 amino acids *already* consists of a leader sequence (i.e., a signal sequence) representing the first approximately 24 amino acids, and a mature protein of 326 amino acids. (See, e.g., page 5 of opposed application; see also OKA1 at 2.1 - 3.3.) However, HGS apparently did not ask her to run such an experiment, or to report the results of such an experiment if she ran it.[4] Scientists in 1994 or today would not have had any reason to express a protein that already contained a signal sequence using a method that involved attaching a second, heterologous signal sequence (e.g., Dr. Power's Ig Kappa signal sequence) to the beginning of the natural signal sequence. Therefore, it is not clear to me what basis there is in the patent application for instructing Dr. Power to attach a heterologous signal sequence to 350 amino acid VEGF2. Dr. Power's experiments are not a replication of any example in the opposed application or a reasonable extension of any of its teachings. Dr. Power was not asked to practice the teachings in the application, but rather, to use her present knowledge to design experiments unrelated to the patent application, using materials and methods that were available in 1994.

5.4 Dr. Powers states that, for starting materials, she used nucleotide sequences obtained directly from the ATCC and says that ATCC Deposit No. 75698 contains the nucleotide sequence encoding the 350 amino acid form of VEGF2. See ASP1 at 5. I find this statement very confusing because, as I indicated above, this ATCC clone does not encode 350 amino acids. Perhaps HGS supplied Dr. Power with the 350 amino acid form of VEGF2, and mistakenly led her to believe that the clone was the same as the deposit. The fact that the ATCC clone does not even contain the first twenty-four amino acids further confirms that HGS considered those amino acids to be the signal peptide, and thought that those amino acids should be removed. The opposed application did not teach to attach a foreign signal sequence to the 350 amino acid sequence.

---

[4] As I report herein and in OKA1, I have run that experiment and shown that the teachings in the opposed application are wrong.

5.5 Dr. Power describes the antibody she uses as one "which recognizes the precursor form and the processed form of VEGF2." ASP1 at 3 and 13. This statement is confusing because it is unclear what "precursor" and "processed" refer to. For example, we know from experiments in our laboratory that the 419 amino acid prepro-VEGF-C (the precursor) is processed by removal of a signal peptide, removal of a large C-terminal BR3P domain representing almost half of the protein, and, to produce a fully processed VEGF-C, removal of still another N-terminal pro-peptide. **See Document D71.** Neither of HGS's patent applications relating to VEGF2 teach such processing. The opposed application teaches that VEGF2 is a 350 amino acid precursor with a 326 amino acid mature protein. As we now know that is not correct. Dr. Power further confuses this issue by adding an Ig Kappa signal peptide to the 350 amino acid VEGF2.

5.6 Dr. Power summarizes the results of her experiments in paragraph 15. As I explain above, this should be ignored, because the experiments that she ran are unrelated to the teachings in the patent application. One additional observation regarding her results is that she makes specific mention of a doublet of approximately 30 kDa being present in the medium from the cells. It is worth noting that the opposed application makes no mention of this species of polypeptide, or of a method of making it, or that one should expect to achieve it.

Summary

6.1 The experiments that I report herein confirm my first set of experiments (reported in OKA1) and establish that VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application cannot be expressed and secreted. None of the declarations filed by HGS provide any experimental evidence to refute this fact. To the extent that the HGS declarations offered any criticisms of my first set of experiments (legitimate or otherwise), I have addressed them in my second set of experiments. To the extent that the HGS declarations (e.g., Dr. Power) offer any experimental evidence, such evidence is irrelevant because it is not based on teachings in the opposed patent application.

AND I MAKE this solemn declaration by virtue of the Statutory Declarations Act 1959, and subject to the penalties provided by that Act for the making of false statements in statutory declarations, conscientiously believing the statements contained in this declaration to be true in every particular.

DECLARED at Helsinki

this 24th day of September 2001

Kari Alitalo

BEFORE ME:

(Signature of Witness)

JUKKA HEIKKILÄ
Notary Public

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

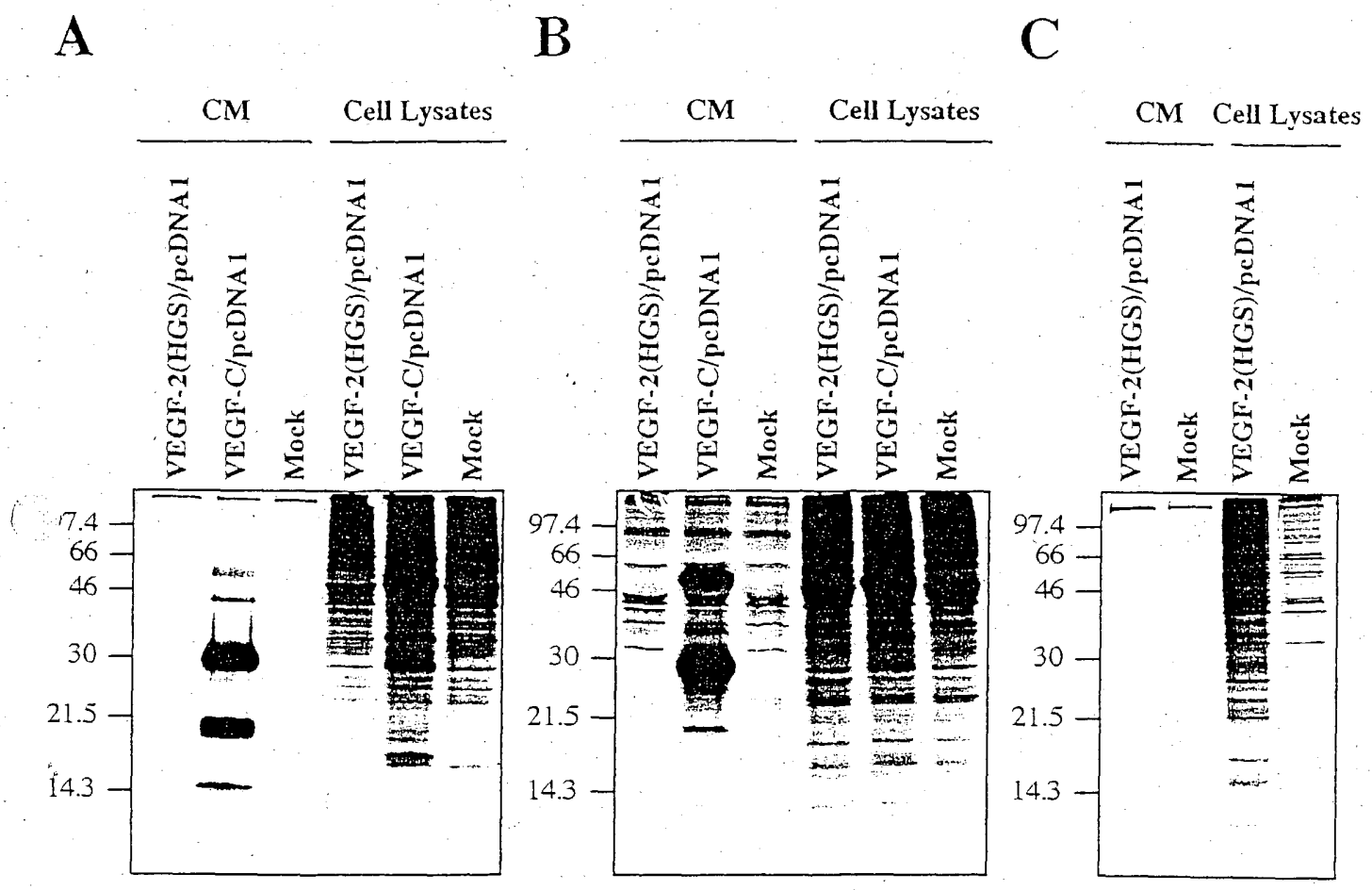
IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit 1 referred to in the Statutory Declaration of Kari Alitalo made before me

DATED this 24th Day of September, 2001

.....

Witness JUKKA HEIKKILÄ
Notary Public


A
B
C
CM
Cell Lysates
VEGF-2(HGS)/pcDNA1
VEGF-C/pcDNA1
Mock
97.4
66
46
30
21.5
14.3

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit 2 referred to in the Statutory Declaration of Kari Alitalo

made before me

DATED this 24th Day of September, 2001

HELSINGIN MAISTRAATTI MAGISTRATEN I HELSINGFORS

.....

Witness JUKKA HEIKKILÄ
Notary Public

PACKING LIST

10801 University Boulevard
Manassas, Virginia, 20110-2209 USA
703-365-2700 FAX: 703-365-2750
EMAIL: sales@atcc.org

ATCC 10801 University Blvd., Manassas, VA 20110-2209 USA
EMERGENCY RESPONSE: Chemtrec (800) 424-9300 or (202) 483-7616

BILL-TO:

24311
Marshall O'Toole
Gerstein, Murray & Brown
233 S Wacker Dr
Ste 6300

SHIP-TO:

SALES ORDER #: so87187

00086563
Univ of Helsinki
Molecular Cancer Biology Lab
Haartman Inst
Haartmaniukatu 3
Fin- 00014 Helsinki
Finland

20.5.99

ATTN: Alitalo, Kari
TEL #: 358-9-1912-6434

Export License No. NLR

CUSTOMER P.O. #: 2896710004AU

SOLD TO: 24311	FOB: Manassas, VA	SHIPPED VIA: Expeditor	FREIGHT LIST
ORDER DATE: 05/03/99			
SALESPERSON: gharring	BOL:	SHIP DATE: 05/07/99	RT-NON

#	BSL	ITEM NUMBER	UM	QTY SHIP	QTY B.O.	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	NET PRICE
						Export License No. NLR Customs Value $179.00		
001	1	75698	EA	1	0	RESTRICTED PATENT, REFER ALL ORDERS	179.00	179.00
002		PERMITS REQUIRED	EA	1	0	ATCC Internal Use Only	0.00	0.00

Taxable Total: 0.00
Tax[1]: 00.00% Tax[2]: 00.00% Tax[3]: 00.00%
Amount Pre-Paid: 0.00

Line Total: 179.00
Total Tax: 0.00
Shipping & Handling: 140.00
00.00% Discount: 0.00
USD Grand Total: 319.00

ATCC® is a registered trademark of the American *Type Culture* Collection. ATCC® cultures designated as Biosafety Level (BSL) 2 and 3 are known pathogens, and other ATCC® cultures may be pathogenic under certain conditions. Recipients of ATCC® cultures assume all risks and responsibilities in connection with their receipt, handling, storage and use, and should be familiar with procedures for safe handling of biological material. Cultures designated as "patent" were deposited in connection with a patent application and may be claimed in a patent. Receipt of a patent culture from ATCC® does not grant any license, express or implied, under any patent, or the right to use the culture in any process described in a patent.

Page # 001

These commodities, technology, or software were exported from the United States in accordance with the Export Administration Regulations. Diversion contrary to U.S. law is prohibited.

APOSTILLE

(Convention de La Haye du 5 octobre 1961)

1. Maa:
   Land: Suomi
   Finland

   Tämän yleisen asiakirjan:
   Denna allmänna handling:

2. on allekirjoittanut
   är undertecknad av: Jukka Heikkilä

3. toimiessaan
   i egenskap av: julkisena notaarina

4. Siinä oleva leima/sinetti on
   är försedd med sigill/stämpel av: Helsingin maistraatti

Todistetaan
Intygas

5. Helsingi ssa
   i

6. 24 päivänä syys kuuta 2001
   den

7. Hans Sevelius, julkinen notaari
   av

8. No 8965
   Nr

9. Sinetti/leima:
   Sigill/stämpel:

HELSINGIN MAISTRAATTI
MAGISTRATEN I HELSINGFORS

10. Allekirjoitus:
    Underskrift:

Hans Sevelius
julkinen notaari

Australia

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc

and

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research.

STATUTORY DECLARATION

I, Peter Adrian Walton Rogers of the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Monash University, Clayton, Victoria, Australia do solemnly and sincerely declare as follows:

INTRODUCTION

1.1 I have been asked by the Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research ("Ludwig Institute") to serve as a scientific expert in connection with Ludwig Institute's opposition to the issuance of a patent to Human Genome Sciences, Inc., ("HGS") based on HGS's Australian Patent Application No. 696764. The patent application relates generally to a gene and protein for an alleged novel vascular endothelial growth factor called "Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor 2" ("VEGF2"), and thus pertains to an area of biology closely related to my research and expertise. I understand that Ludwig Institute is a named co-applicant for a different patent application directed to subject matter that may be related to "VEGF2."

1.2 In February 2000 I executed a first statutory declaration to provide evidence in support of Ludwig Institute's opposition, hereinafter referred to as "OPR1" (Opponents, Peter Rogers, 1st Declaration). That first declaration included a brief summary of my scientific credentials and an introduction in which I set forth some

conventional terminology that I used throughout the declaration. I shall continue to use such terminology herein.

1.3 I hereby reaffirm my understanding that I have an overriding duty to the Patent Office (and to any Australian Federal Court that should review the Patent Office decision) to provide objective scientific analysis that I believe to be truthful. I hereby affirm that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, factual statements herein are true and opinion statements herein represent my objective scientific opinion and analysis.

1.4 My original declaration included evidence relevant to whether the opposed application lacked novelty (OPR1 at 2.1-2.8); lacked inventive step (OPR1 at 3.1-3.8); lacked sufficiency (OPR1 at 4.1-4.14); lacked fair basis (OPR1 at 5.1-5.12); lacked clarity (OPR1 at 6.1-6.11); and was not a manner of manufacture (OPR1 at 7.1-7.6). In response, the patent applicant HGS filed declarations from six scientists, John Stanley Mattick (hereinafter "AJM1"(Applicants, John Mattick, 1st Declaration)), Jennifer Ruth Gamble ("AJG1"), Nicholas Kim Hayward ("ANH1"), Thomas Rapoport ("ATR1"), Stuart Aaronsson ("ASA1"), and Susan Power ("ASP1"). In this declaration I respond to issues raised by the HGS declarants.

1.5 For the most part, the six HGS declarations are not organized by grounds of opposition, and it is not always possible to determine the issues to which the HGS declarants are responding. The HGS declarations also are repetitive of each other. I have tried to determine the issues to which HGS's evidence pertains, and reply to those issues in a topical fashion, rather than addressing each declaration serially. I have attempted to organize many of my comments in the same manner as my original OPR1 declaration, where it appears that HGS's evidence is addressing particular patent issues (e.g., novelty-inventive step or lack of fair basis/insufficiency). I have also addressed particular issues raised by individual declarants. Failure to address any specific issues should not be interpreted as agreement with any HGS declarant.

1.6 Unless I specifically state otherwise below, I affirm the facts and opinions expressed in my prior declaration. Nothing in HGS's evidence-in-answer causes me to change the opinions embodied in my first declaration.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS REGARDING QUALITY OF HGS EVIDENCE

2.1 I would first like to make the following preliminary observations about the HGS evidence-in-answer which are relevant to most or all patentability issues.

A. THE HGS DECLARATIONS APPLY A SCIENTIFIC "DOUBLE STANDARD"

2.2 I have reviewed all of the declarations filed by HGS and observe that the declarants that reviewed Professor Alitalo's declaration (filed as part of Ludwig Institute's evidence-in-opposition) seem to believe that no conclusions can be drawn from a scientific experiment unless the experiment contains absolutely perfect, parallel positive and negative controls. (See AJG1 at7.43 and 7.52; ANH1 at 5.6-5.13; ASA1 at 11, 13, 14, and 18] The Alitalo declaration provided direct evidence that VEGF2 cannot be expressed and secreted in the manner taught by HGS in the opposed application, but the HGS declarants suggest that such experiments are flawed and cannot form the basis for any valid conclusions.

2.3 The HGS declarants also are very restrictive of the conclusions that they are willing to draw based upon prior art. For example, when discussing the prior art, Dr. Mattick does not believe that any conclusions can be drawn about whether antibodies raised against a prior art VEGF polypeptide will cross react with *identical* sequences that occur in VEGF2 on a theoretical level - he would need actual experimental data. (AJM1 4.33) This is Dr. Mattick's position even though he asserts a few pages later (when commenting on sufficiency of disclosure), that "computer programs were *readily available* in 1994 to generate" information about "all of the antigenic sites on the VEGF-2 molecule." (AJM1 4.83). His opinions on these antibody issues are inconsistent.

2.4 In stark contrast, the declarants that HGS asked to evaluate the quality of the teachings of the opposed application have taken a very lenient approach. These declarants appear to have accepted that VEGF2 can be expressed in the manner suggested in the opposed application,[1] even though there is not a single experimental example in the opposed application in which the inventors report successful expression of VEGF2 in a cell. (See OPR1 at 3.4.2, 3.5, 4.6.2.2, and 7.6) The HGS declarants have also accepted that VEGF2 has certain biological activities, even though the opposed application contains no evidence whatsoever of biological activity, and the declarants do not appear to have performed any biological activity testing of their own. (OPR1 at 2.3.2, 2.7.4, 3.4.2, 4.6, 4.6.1-4.6.5, 4.8, 5.4, 5.5, and 5.9) These declarants have also accepted that VEGF2 can be used to diagnose or treat a wide variety of diseases, even though the opposed application contains no evidence whatsoever that VEGF2 can be used for such purposes. (OPR1 at 2.3.3-2.3.4, 3.7.1, 4.6.3, and 6.8.1-6.8.4.)

2.5 In my opinion, these two extreme approaches are irreconcilable. The experiments performed by Dr. Alitalo and described in his first declaration are more relevant to the adequacy of the teachings in the opposed application than the experiments (or lack thereof) described in the application itself, or the experiments by Dr. Power (discussed below in greater detail), which are not based on the teachings in the opposed application. (And, had HGS raised any legitimate criticisms of Dr. Alitalo's first declaration, the criticisms have been fully addressed by the experiments Dr.

---

[1] See, e.g., AJM1 at 4.19-4.23 (Mattick cataloging uses for VEGF2 alleged in the opposed application) and 4.24 (Mattick concluding that these unsupported uses "constitutes the basic information that I would have required in 1994 to use VEGF-2 in a wide range of biological activities.") [See AJM1 at 3.31, 3.33, 4.3-4.13, 4.77-4.78; AJG1 at 6.5, 6.8, 6.11, 7.24, 7.46, 7.48; ANH1 at 3.15, 3.19-3.23, 3.26, 4.20; ATR1 at 9-12; ASA1 at 6 and 17]

Alitalo describes in his second declaration.)[2] When all of the scientific evidence in the opposition proceeding is viewed objectively, one finds direct evidence (from Dr. Alitalo, two sets of experiments) that the VEGF2 invention does not work as it was described in the opposed application, because it is incomplete. Neither the opposed application nor the HGS declaration present any evidence to suggest that VEGF2 as described in the patent application works. The choice of the HGS declarants to discount the scientific evidence and accept the teachings in the patent application about VEGF2 is not based on any scientific principles.

2.6 Dr. Gamble's declaration provides another excellent example. There is *direct experimental evidence* underlying Dr. Alitalo's declaration that VEGF2 taught in the application cannot be expressed and secreted. Yet notwithstanding that evidence, Dr Gamble says, "In my opinion Dr. Alitalo's conclusions represent pure speculation and cannot reasonably be drawn from the results presented in his statutory declaration . . ." Yet, Dr. Gamble apparently approves of the opposed application and its teachings, even though none of the teachings relating to VEGF2 or its expression or activity are based on reported experimental evidence. I note that when Dr. Gamble critically evaluates the scientific merit of a patent application, her standard is that "whether a patent specification gives examples of biological activity would seem to me to be largely irrelevant." (AJG1 7.18) In my opinion, her standards for scientific evaluation of declaration documents and patent documents are simply irreconcilable. There are other examples as well:

---

[2] Dr. Alitalo's first declaration demonstrated that VEGF2 cannot be expressed and secreted as taught in the opposed application. The HGS declarants argued that these results were not reliable because the experiments lacked appropriate controls, for example, but did not present any of their own experiments to show successful expression and secretion. As reported in his second declaration, Dr. Alitalo re-ran his experiments using the controls suggested by HGS and addressing other concerns raised by them, and showed again that VEGF2 cannot be expressed and secreted as taught in the opposed application. In my opinion, his second declaration further validates his first declaration and addresses the criticism raised by HGS. Dr. Alitalo's experiments are really the only evidence on this important subject in this opposition proceeding, because the opposed application contains no evidence of successful expression and secretion of VEGF2 by cells, and HGS provided no such evidence in any of its declarations. (Dr. Power says she expressed and secreted a protein, but the expression experiment that she described is not based on what HGS taught in its application.)

2.6.1 Dr. Gamble "would expect that VEGF2 could be expressed and secreted and would be biologically active (AJG1 at 6.5), even though the application contains no evidence that it can be expressed or secreted. She seems to expect that such expression would be routine in virtually any type of cell, even though the application failed to show expression in any cell types. (AJG1 6.6.) In my opinion, this assertion is simply pure speculation .

2.6.2 Dr. Gamble's opinion is that the mere identification of a DNA sequence and the inherent information it provides, combined with the teachings in the patent specification, "makes possible the manifest therapeutic benefits, which VEGF-2 has to offer, and which will be obtained in the future." (AJG1 at 6.6) She holds these opinions even though the application has no experimental evidence of VEGF2 biological activity, and certainly no evidence that VEGF2 is therapeutic for any disease. In my opinion, in light of the objective scientific evidence, her expressed opinion is pure speculation.

2.6.3 Dr. Gamble finds that the application provides "information concerning gene therapy to provide therapeutic and prophylactic effects against a wide range of different disease states". (AJG1 at 6.8.10) However, the application provides no evidence of gene therapy. Additionally, in all of medicine, there are not currently "a wide range of different disease states" that are treated with gene therapy (using any known gene). Again, in my opinion, in light of the objective scientific evidence, her expressed opinion is pure speculation.

2.6.4 Dr. Gamble finds that the application indicates that VEGF-2 could be isolated from a human cell library from a human embryo, from osteoclastomas, from adult heart, or from adult breast cancer cell lines (AJG1 6.8.3), even though the application fails to demonstrate isolation of VEGF2 protein from any source whatsoever. In my opinion, in light of the objective evidence, her expressed opinion is pure speculation.

2.7. While these are only a few of the examples I could give, I believe my point is clear. Applying a uniform and scientifically objective standard, it would make no sense to

disbelieve a carefully planned and executed experiment by Dr Alitalo, the scientist who is perhaps more familiar with VEGF-C and the VEGF2/VEGF-C gene than any other scientist, if journal publications are any indication, but instead to believe a patent application that speculates widely but has no underlying experimental support.

B. MIS-QUOTES AND CROPPED QUOTES

2.8 The HGS declarants frequently say that they are quoting from or paraphrasing statements from my first declaration, and then responding to them. Occasionally, the quotes are incomplete, or out of context, and fail to capture my full thoughts and opinions on subjects. Sometimes, the paraphrases are simply inaccurate. In some cases, HGS declarants say that are responding to my declaration, when they are not. It is important to read my declaration in context to determine whether the HGS declarants have really responded to what I have said, and not rely on their representations.

C. FAILURE TO ANALYZE FROM THE STANDPOINT OF SCIENTISTS HAVING COMMON GENERAL KNOWLEDGE IN THE FIELD.

2.9 It is my understanding of Australian patent law that most patentability issues are analyzed from the viewpoint of an individual possessed of the common general knowledge in the field of the invention, in Australia, at the time that the patent application was filed. However, this is not always the approach taken by at least some of HGS's declarants.

2.10 For example, Dr. Mattick explicitly states that his instructions from HGS were "To review the patent specification and to describe what it would have **conveyed to me** had I read it in March 1994." (AJM1 at 2.3.1 (emphasis added).) Dr. Mattick was also instructed "To base all comments presented herein on **my knowledge** as at 8 March 1994, unless I specifically state otherwise." (AJM1 at 2.3.3 (emphasis added).) A vast part of Dr. Mattick's declaration explicitly sets forth this personal point of view, i.e., conclusions that Dr. Mattick personally believes that he would

have drawn or results that he believes he could have personally achieved. (AJM1 at, e.g., 3.33,4.13, 4.73, and 4.77.) To the extent Dr. Mattick's (or other declarants') prominence and experience and positions gave him knowledge greater than the common general knowledge in Australia in 1994, many of the personal opinions expressed in his declaration may not be relevant to patentability issues.

D. FAILURE TO CONSIDER ALL RELEVANT EVIDENCE

2.11 It is not clear from the evidence submitted whether all of HGS's experts considered all of the relevant evidence in reaching their opinions expressed in their declarations.

2.12 For example, Ludwig Institute's evidence in opposition included a declaration from Professor Alitalo setting forth evidence that VEGF2 as taught in the HGS application is incomplete and is not expressed and secreted as a growth factor by cells. In my opinion an expert providing an opinion as to the sufficiency and fair basis of the HGS application should have considered evidence about whether the invention works as HGS alleged that it would. It is not clear that Dr. Mattick, Dr. Power, or Dr. Rapoport gave due consideration to the Alitalo declaration.

E. IS VEGF2 THE SAME AS VEGF-C?

2.13 Dr. Mattick explains that "HGS' Patent Attorneys have informed me that VEGF-2 and VEGF-C are the same molecule." (AJM1 at 3.3.) Dr. Gamble says "Today, VEGF-2 is identified by the nomenclature VEGF-C. When I read VEGF-2 in the patent specification I understand it to mean VEGF-C" (AJG1 at 3.1.) Dr. Rapoport says, "It is my understanding that VEGF-2 and VEGF-C are terms used to refer to the same molecule." (ATR1 at 13.) Dr. Rapoport uses the two terms interchangeably. (ATR1 at 13.) This position requires clarification.

2.14 As I stated in my earlier declaration, it is probably true that VEGF2 and VEGF-C were *derived from* the same human gene. (See OPR1 at 1.5.1.) However, these are

names given by two different research groups to the results of their own research, which differed substantially. The advice from HGS's attorneys or the assumption that these terms can be used interchangeably glosses over substantial differences between the secreted growth factor "VEGF-C" described in patent and scientific literature by Alitalo et al.,[3] and the incomplete "VEGF2" sequence taught in the opposed application, that is apparently never secreted[4] and has never been reported in the scientific literature to have significant biological activity. (I repeat by reference my discussion of the inadequacy of the description of VEGF2 in OPR1 at, e.g., 1.5.1-1.5.2, 4.4-4.7 and 4.11-4.11.2.) To the extent that Dr. Mattick or Dr. Gamble or Dr. Rapoport believed that any of the scientific literature that has been published relating to VEGF-C is relevant to patentability issues for the *incomplete VEGF2* taught in the opposed application, they have based their declarations on incorrect assumptions. The experiments described in Professor Alitalo's two declarations (hereinafter OKA1 and OKA2) demonstrate that the incomplete VEGF2 taught in the opposed application cannot be expressed and secreted.

2.15 Dr. Hayward clearly intermingles his knowledge of VEGF-C with the teachings in the opposed application relating to VEGF2. For example, Dr. Hayward declared, "I am aware that VEGF-2 is proteolytically processed upon secretion from cells in vivo to form the naturally occurring ligand for the Flt-4 and the KDR/Flk-1 receptors. I would expect a fusion of the 350 amino acid sequence of VEGF-2 to a signal sequence to be proteolytically processed to produce functional VEGF-2." In reality, scientists such as the group led by Alitalo et al. have demonstrated that a heavily processed form of VEGF-C (lacking about 102 amino acids from the beginning (N-terminus) and about 190 amino acids from the end (C-terminus)) binds and stimulates the Flt4 and KDR/Flk-1 receptors. (See, e.g., Documents D70-D74.) The opposed application does not teach that VEGF2 is a ligand for any receptor, and does not teach

---

[3] See, e.g., OPR1 at 1.5.3-1.5.4 and Documents D71-D74.

[4] See Alitalo Declaration filed by Ludwig Institute as part of evidence in opposition.

that VEGF2 is processed in a manner similar to VEGF-C, and does not teach to fuse the 350 amino acids of VEGF2 with an extra foreign signal sequence. Instead, the application teaches that full length VEGF2 is 350 amino acids which includes a signal sequence of about 24 amino acids and mature VEGF2 of about 326 amino acids. By contrast, Dr. Alitalo's declarations establish that VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application is not expressed and secreted at all. When HGS determined that VEGF2 in the opposed application was incomplete, and filed a second patent application (**Document D43**) on the 419 amino acid VEGF2 more than a year later, HGS still failed to teach that VEGF2 was a ligand for Flt4 or any other receptor, and failed to teach the VEGF-C processing that was elucidated by Professor Alitalo's group. Thus, Dr. Hayward's "awareness" of VEGF2 processing relates to Dr. Alitalo's VEGF-C, and not HGS's VEGF2.

2.16 Dr. Rapoport devotes a significant part of his declaration to discussing biologically active VEGF-C molecules invented by Alitalo and Joukov. (See, e.g., ATR1 at 13-15.) It is important to remember that Alitalo and Joukov taught VEGF-C "biological activity" (e.g., binding to Flt4 receptor and stimulation of lymphatic endothelia) that were not suggested by (and owe nothing to) the opposed application. The suggestion that the Alitalo work confirms teachings in the opposed application is entirely misleading. (See, e.g., ATR1 at 16.)

LACK OF NOVELTY AND INVENTIVE STEP OF CLAIMS OF THE OPPOSED APPLICATION

3.0 In Section 2 of the OPR1 declaration, I explained that at least claims 1-4, 13-28, and 34-61 in the opposed application were broad enough to encompass materials and methods that had been taught in the prior art literature that predated HGS's earliest alleged priority date of 08 March 1994. The prior art upon which I drew these conclusions did not teach the exact VEGF2 DNA or deduced amino acid sequences in the figures or sequence listing of the opposed application, but the claims at issue are not limited to exact, full length VEGF2 sequences.

3.1 In this section I explain that the HGS declarants consistently fail to identify any explicit claim language that excludes the prior art that I identified in my first declaration. I address the particulars of the HGS declarations below, but I maintain my original opinion, expressed in OPR1, that most or all of the claims encompass the prior works of others.

3.2 The HGS declarants' principal response to the references cited in my first declaration that demonstrate that the application lacked novelty comprises generalized statements that a practitioner in the appropriate field of research would be able to distinguish VEGF2 fragments, analogs, derivatives, variants, and other genera of molecules claimed in the opposed application from prior art polynucleotides and polypeptides (e.g., VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb, PlGF, and fragments, analogs, and derivatives thereof disclosed or suggested in the prior art.). A consistent shortcoming of these declarations is the *failure to point to any language in the claims* that defines VEGF2 molecules in a way that excludes prior art molecules.

A. **"Fragment, Analogue, or Derivative" Language Fails to Exclude the Prior Art from the Claims.**

3.3 Several claims in the opposed application are not limited to the exact VEGF2 sequences because they are directed to a "fragment, analogue or derivative" of a VEGF2 polypeptide (*e.g.*, claim 28) or to a polynucleotide encoding a "fragment, analogue or derivative" of a VEGF2 polypeptide (*e.g.*, claims 1-4, 21). According to the specification, fragments, derivatives, or analogues may be VEGF2 polypeptides modified such that one or more of the amino acid residues of VEGF2 are substituted with conserved or non-conserved amino acid residues, and/or ones in which additional amino acids are fused to the mature polypeptide. (See, *e.g.*, opposed application at pp. 9-10.) Also, polypeptides resulting from deletion of amino acids would still fall within the commonly accepted definition of "fragment, analogue, or derivative." (See also opposed application at page 7, discussing "deletion variants, substitution variants, and addition or insertion variants.")

3.4 In OPR1 I explained that the prior art taught DNA sequences and polypeptides, such as VEGF, PlGF, PDGF-a, and PDGF-b, that differed from the exact VEGF2 DNA and amino acid sequences taught in the opposed application, but still fell within the opposed application's definition of "fragment, analog, or derivative." (See OPR1 at 2.2-2.2.2, 2.3, 2.7.1, 2.7.9, and 2.7.20.) Much of the opponent's evidence in answer is directed to a philosophical discussion of whether these prior art polypeptides, which although they satisfy the literal definition of VEGF2 "fragment, analogue, or derivative", should nonetheless be considered to fall outside the scope of the claims.

3.5 The opposed application says that "it is particularly important that all eight cysteines are conserved within all four members of the family...." These eight cysteines are the only VEGF2 amino acids that the opposed application seems to say should remain unchanged when designing fragments, analogs, or derivatives. However, the application itself admits that the eight cysteines are a feature that VEGF2 already has in common with prior art family members VEGF, PDGFa, and PDGFb. Thus, the opposed application places no restrictions when designing fragments, analogues, and derivatives that would prevent one from arriving at these prior art polypeptides. In other words, all of these prior art molecules (which already contained the eight cysteines) could fairly be classified as VEGF2 fragments, analogues, or derivatives as those terms are used in the opposed application. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 2.2 - 2.2.2.) The claims do not restrict the number of modifications to the VEGF2 sequence that a VEGF2 fragment, analogue, or derivative can contain, so in effect, VEGF2 could be modified until it matched VEGF, PlGF, or PDGF.

3.6 None of the HGS declarants actually contest my analysis that the *claims* fail to recite restrictions on "fragment, analogue, or derivative" that would serve to exclude the prior art polynucleotides and polypeptides such as VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb, and PlGF. In fact, Dr. Mattick basically admits that *the claims* set forth no maximum number of changes that can be made to a protein that is to be classified as a VEGF2 frragment, analog, or derivative; he simply would not require that as part of the patent laws. (See AJM1 4.37.)

3.7 Instead of finding *claim limitations* that exclude the prior art, the HGS declarants have proposed a subjective "looks more like" standard for *interpreting* the claims that they say would exclude VEGF and the PDGFs from the claims:

3.7.1 For example, Dr. Mattick said: "I would not require the patent specification to set a maximum limit of modifications that can be made to a protein before I could reasonably ascertain whether a protein was a fragment, analogue, and/or derivative of VEGF-2. . . . As soon as a protein starts to look more like VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb, or PIGF, it would not, in my opinion, be a fragment, analogue and/or derivative of VEGF-2. Thus, I would not regard any of VEGF, PlGF, PDGFa or PDGFb to be VEGF-2 fragments, analogues and/or derivatives." (AJM1 4.37; see also AJM1 4.26.)

3.7.2 Similarly, Dr. Gamble said: "For something to be a fragment, derivative or analogue of a molecule it must not only share a biological function or activity with VEGF-2 but it must also have homology at the primary amino acid level. Thus, a peptide or polypeptide that more closely resembles VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb or PlGF, than VEGF-2 at the primary amino acid level would not be a VEGF-2 fragment, derivative or analogue. Such an interpretation is inherent in the meaning of these terms and is consistent with the general manner in which others and I use these terms in everyday scientific language." (AJG1 at 7.12. See also AJG1 7.25 - 7.27)

3.7.3 Similarly, Dr. Hayward declared that there is not sufficient sequence identity between VEGF2 and PDGF, VEGF, or PlGF for these molecules to be considered derivatives of VEGF2. (See, e.g., ANH1 at 3.8, 4.2.) Dr. Hayward fails to explain what minimum sequence identity is required, and, of course, the claims do not set a minimum sequence identity.

3.8 This "looks more like" approach is unworkable. It is highly subjective, vague, has no basis in the opposed application, and would cause the scope of the claims to change over time.

3.9 First, the approach that HGS is advocating is contrary to the understanding of patent law given to me by Ludwig Institute's attorneys. It is my understanding that the words of the claim are supposed to define its scope, not subjective "looks like" criteria. The reader is supposed to be able to determine whether or not something falls within a claim by criteria that are reasonably clear.

3.10 In fact, the application discloses no clear standards for deciding whether a theoretical analog "looks more like" VEGF or VEGF2, and there are no universal standards in the field of the invention, either. In the context of proteins, the "looks like" criteria could be based on percent amino acid similarity, or on three-dimensional shape, or on size, or more subtle criteria, such as whether amino acids that are believed to be essential for activity are more like those found in VEGF or VEGF2.

3.10.1 To give one hypothetical example, the VEGF2 polypeptide has an approximately 190 amino acid stretch that shares homology with a silk protein. (See OPR1 at 4.11.1.3 and **Document D71**, Joukov et al., EMBO J 16:3898-3911(1997)) Removal of most or all of this large portion of VEGF2 would give the resultant VEGF2 fragment a size much more similar to the size of VEGF. Further, the folded shape of the truncated VEGF2, missing this silk-like domain, might be expected to look much more like the three-dimensional shape of VEGF polypetides having a similar size. But this fragment has 100% amino acid identity with a portion of VEGF2 and much lower amino acid identity with VEGF. Under Dr. Mattick's "looks like" criteria, its not clear whether or not we have a molecule within HGS's claims, because it is unclear whether size, or shape, or % identity, or other properties are the most important criteria.

3.10.2 To give another example, mature VEGF-C has an amino acid sequence nearly identical to a portion of VEGF2, if the approximately 190 BR3P-like amino acids are removed from the C-terminus, and still more amino acids are removed from the N-terminus of VEGF2. This molecule will bind one of the two VEGF receptors (VEGFR-2), whereas VEGF2 will not. (See OPR1 at 4.11.1.3 and Joukov et al., EMBO J 16:3898-3911(1997)) It is unclear under the "looks like" criteria whether one should classify VEGF-C as a VEGF2 analog (because of amino acid sequence identity) or a VEGF analog (because of receptor binding properties). Receptor binding properties would be one of the most important practical criteria for scientists who wished to develop therapeutic applications for a putative growth factor, which clearly seems to be a goal of the opposed application. (It is generally through cellular receptors that growth factors exert their effects in the body.)

3.11 The opposed application itself says nothing whatsoever about the "looks more like" standard for delimiting the boundaries of "fragment, analogue, or derivative." In fact, the opposed application fails to mention any standard.

3.12 Another troubling aspect of HGS's approach is that the scope of the claims will change with time, as new genes are discovered, because the scope of "fragment, analog, or derivative" would continue to change as more genes are discovered. This problem is best illustrated with two real-world examples.

3.12.1 If we placed ourselves back in time to March, 1994, and were given the sequence of VEGF2 and asked to characterize it, the proper answer, according to the "looks more like" standard, would have been to call it a "VEGF fragment, analog, or derivative." The reason for this conclusion *at that time* would have been that the VEGF2 sequence more closely resembled VEGF (30% amino acid identity) than any other known protein at the primary amino acid level. (See Figure 3 of the opposed application.) VEGF2 "looked more like" VEGF than other known molecules. Using the logic of Dr. Mattick and

Dr. Gamble, the VEGF2 sequence would have been a mere analogue or derivative of VEGF.

3.12.2 Some time after 1994, the VEGF-D gene and protein were discovered by Achen et al. (See OPR1 at 4.12.1; and Document D67.) VEGF-D has greater amino acid percent identity to VEGF2 than it has to VEGF. Under the HGS "looks more like" criteria, VEGF-D might be considered to fall within the HGS claims (because it is more similar to VEGF2 than VEGF). On the other hand, VEGF-D is a separate human protein in its own right, encoded by its own gene, that owes nothing to the discovery of VEGF2. (See OPR1 at 4.12.1.) It would make no more sense to call VEGF-D an analog or derivative of VEGF2 than it would have made to call VEGF2 a mere analog or derivative of VEGF, when VEGF2 was discovered (due to shared amino acid motifs and allegedly shared biological activities).

3.12.3 The logical extension of saying that a newly discovered protein (such as VEGF-D) is *not* a fragment, analog, or derivative of a previously discovered one (such as VEGF2) is that the scope of HGS's patent claims to VEGF2 fragments, analogs, and derivatives becomes narrower each time a new gene family member, such as VEGF-D, is discovered. In other words, before the discovery of VEGF2, all of the analogs that looked more like VEGF than PDGF would have been called VEGF analogs. Then, when VEGF2 was discovered, some of those "VEGF analogs" would have needed to be re-classified as "VEGF2 analogs" because they looked more like VEGF2 than VEGF. In fact, all of the VEGF analogs that looked more like VEGF2 than VEGF or the PDGFs would have been reclassified as VEGF2 analogs. But then, when VEGF-D was discovered, some of those analogs would more properly be classified as VEGF-D analogs, because they were more similar to newly discovered VEGF-D than to VEGF, VEGF2, or the PDGFs.

3.12.4 My purpose with this exercise is to show that if you try to apply a "looks more like" standard for interpreting the claims directed to fragments, analogues, and

derivatives, then the breadth of the claim gets narrower every time someone discovers a new member of the VEGF family. The idea that the scope of patent claims changes each time a new VEGF family member is discovered is contrary to my understanding of the clarity requirement of the patent laws. It would cause confusion and uncertainty for scientists trying to interpret the claims.

3.12.5 To summarize, the literal scope of "fragment, analogue, or derivative" claims embraces VEGF, PDGFa, and PDGFb, all of which were known in the field and described in the literature before the priority date of the opposed application. The subjective "looks more like" standard proposed by HGS to avoid this confusion has no support in the application or the claims. It is unworkably vague and causes the scope of the claims to change over time.

B. VEGF2 "Activity" Language Fails to Exclude the Prior Art from the Claims.

3.13 A number of the claims of the opposed application use an activity limitation to attempt to define which polynucleotides and polypeptides fall within a claim and which ones do not. I explained in my first declaration that the list of activities ascribed to VEFG2 by the opposed application are merely activities that have been ascribed to VEGF, PDGF, and/or PlGF prior art polypeptides. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 2.3-2.3.5.) For this reason, claim limitations directed to "VEGF2 activity" fail to exclude the aforementioned prior art polypeptides, because the only teachings in the opposed application relating to VEGF2 activity are predictions that VEGF2 will share activities that other scientists had identified in the aforementioned prior art polypeptides. (See OPR1 at 2.3-2.3.5, 2.7.4, 2.7.9, and 4.6-4.8.)

3.14 None of HGS's declarants contest the fact that claims which recite "VEGF2 activity" fail to recite an activity that is unique to VEGF2 and that would serve to exclude prior art polypeptides such as VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb, and PlGF.

3.15 Dr. Gamble and others ask the Patent Office to accept that VEGF-2 biological activity means "angiogenic activity" and optionally others. (See, e.g., AJG1 7.9-7.11; 7.15-7.18; and 5.14-5.22. See ANH1 at 3.6) There are several problems with their analysis, including the following:

3.15.1 First, even if we accept her selected definition, angiogenic activity fails to exclude prior art vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) polypeptides from the claims, because VEGF polypeptides are angiogenic, as admitted in the opposed application (background) and in Dr. Gamble's own papers. (See, e.g., Cockerill, Gamble, and Vadas, Annexure GBC-9 in the HGS evidence in reply, at page 136.) In fact, if angiogenic activity is sufficient for VEGF2 activity, then according to Dr. Gamble's publications, PDGF polypeptides are embraced as well. (See Litwin, Gamble, and Vadas, Annexure GBC-10 of the HGS evidence, at page 105 (PDGF "has roles in wound healing and angiogenesis").)

3.15.2 Second, the claims are not restricted to angiogenic activity, and the application teaches that VEGF2 has numerous activities other than angiogenic activities. (See OPR1 at 2.3.3-2.3.5.)

3.15.3 Third, there is simply no evidence that VEGF2 as taught in the patent application has angiogenic activity (or any of the other activities alleged).

3.16 As a related matter, Dr. Gamble declared that an endothelial growth assay could distinguish VEGF2 polypeptides, fragments, analogues, and variants from PDGF polypeptides, analogues, and variants:

> "As an additional point of distinction between VEGF-2 and PDGFa, or PDGFb is that PDGFa and PDGFb do not promote the growth of endothelial cells. Thus had I wanted to distinguish a VEGF-2 fragment, analogue or derivative from any one of these proteins, I could have easily performed one or more assays, such as those identified in paragraph 5.15, above. Such assays could be performed to show that the analogue, fragment or derivative

contained an endothelial cell proliferative activity, while the comparator molecule (such as PDGFa and PDGFb) did not contain such an activity. Such a result would clearly have distinguished a VEGF-2 analogue, fragment or derivative from PDGFa, or PDGFb." (AJG1 at 7.11)

3.17 Dr Gamble's proposition is not correct. First, it is important to re-emphasize that the opposed application teaches that VEGF2 shares biological activities of PDGFa and PDGFb. (See OPR1 at 2.3.3-2.3.5.) Since VEGF2 supposedly has activities other than endothelial growth activities, including PDGF-like activities, it is not clear to me whether the results of only an endothelial cell growth assay would reliably exclude PDGF proteins from the definition of proteins with VEGF2 activity. (See discussion below relating to lack of clarity.) Second, prior art VEGF polypeptides have endothelial cell growth activity, so even if "VEGF2 activity" meant a combination of angiogenic and endothelial cell growth activities, the claims would still encompass prior art VEGF subject matter.

3.18 Dr. Hayward's position regarding "VEGF2 activity" is that he does not understand why a unique defining activity that discriminates VEGF2 from prior art polypeptides (PDGF, VEGF) is necessary at all. He feels that once a substantial portion of the primary amino acid sequence is available, the sequence provides the essential defining characteristic. The answer to Dr. Hayward is that many of the claims (e.g., those that recite fragment, analogue, or derivative and those that recite antibody binding) do not explicitly require the presence of a substantial portion of the primary VEGF2 amino acid sequence. Those claims have neither structural nor functional (activity) limitations that exclude the prior art. If a claim fails to exclude the prior art with structural or functional or other limitations, then the claim encompasses the prior art.

C. "Hybridization" Claim Language Fails to Exclude the Prior Art from the Claims.

3.19 A number of the claims in the opposed application use a hybridization limitation to attempt to define which polynucleotides and polypeptides fall within a claim and which do not. I explained in my first declaration the nature of hybridization experiments, and also that whether two polynucleotides hybridize to each other is dependent on both the relationship of the molecules (complementarity) *and* the conditions under which the hybridization experiment is conducted. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 2.4-2.4.3.) Hybridization experiments are binding experiments with which scientists can determine the relatedness of polynucleotides, and I previously explained that scientists can adjust the experimental conditions (e.g., temperature, ionic strength of solutions used) to increase or decrease the stringency of the experiment and thereby increase or decrease the group of hybridizing polynucleotides. I explained that the HGS claims require no minimum level of stringency that would serve to exclude prior art DNAs/proteins from the claims. (See OPR1 at 2.4-2.4.3, 2.7.5, and 2.7.11-2.7.12.)

3.20 None of HGS's declarants contest the fact that *claims* which recite "hybridization" language fail to *recite hybridization conditions* that would serve to exclude prior art polynucleotides or polypeptides such as VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb, and PlGF.

3.20.1 Dr. Mattick says that when he reads the hybridization language of the claims *in combination with the description of hybridization set forth in the patent specification*, he would understand "it" to mean that hybridization conditions should be sufficiently specific to exclude known, non-VEGF-2 sequences. He says it would have been routine to perform hybridizations to avoid cross-reactivity with prior art sequences. (AJM1 4.28-4.30, 4.39, and 4.49-52.). Thus, Dr. Mattick does not dispute that the *claims* contain no hybridization stringency limitations whatsoever. Dr. Mattick believes the hybridization claims avoid the prior art because exemplary conditions *in the application* should be interpreted as restrictions on the hybridization claims, even though the claims do not contain the hybridization conditions.

3.20.2 Dr. Hayward discusses hybridization at ANH1 3.9 - 3.12 and 4.11-4.15. He admits that varying the hybridization conditions will affect the number of

inexact polynucleotide matches that will hybridize to a target sequence (ANH1 at 3.10), and, like Dr. Mattick, finds an example of conditions *in the specification* which he says will prevent cross-hybridization (ANH1 at 3.11). He says that cross-hybridization would be unlikely *under suitable conditions such as those provided in Example 1.* (ANH1 at 4.11.) However, he does not dispute that such hybridization conditions are not explicitly recited in the claims themselves.

3.21 In view of the comments by the HGS declarants, I have reviewed the application again to determine if the application says that, whenever claims recite hybridization language, the hybridization should be understood to occur under particular conditions. I find no instruction of this nature whatosever.

3.22 My review of other HGS documents further convinces me that the hybridization claims do not exclude the prior art. It appears from other published patent applications that, when HGS intends to limit its claims to certain hybridization conditions, or limit claimed fragments, analogs, or derivatives to those with minimum levels of sequence identity, HGS includes such limitations in the claims.

3.23 Filed with this declaration are **Exhibits PAWR-1 to PAWR-3**, which I understand represent the claims of published patent documents from Human Genome Sciences relating to other DNA and protein inventions. When I examine the claims of those applications, I see explicit limitations like the following:

3.23.1 **Exhibit PAWR-1** comprises claims from Human Genome Sciences Australian Patent Publication No. 714484, also directed to Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor 2, and having common inventors with the opposed application. I observe the following claiming conventions employed by HGS with respect to that VEGF2 invention, which were not employed with respect to the VEGF2 invention in the opposed application:

Claim 1, part m: When claiming polynucleotides that hybridize to a reference polynucleotide, HGS specified polynucleotide fragments

> which hybridize "under the following conditions: hybridisation in 0.5 M sodium peroxide NaPO4, 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) at 65°C and washing with 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 60°C or equivalent hybridisation stringency." (See also claim 14 , 16(m), and 29.)

As I explain in my first declaration, factors such as temperature and solutions used in a hybridization experiment establish (limit) which molecules will "hybridize" and which will not. (See OPR1 at 2.4-2.4.3.) **Exhibit PAWR-2** which comprises claims from HGS Australian Patent Publication No. 726486, includes claims reciting similar hybridization conditions. (See, e.g., claims 33-34.)

3.23.2 **Exhibit PAWR-3** comprises claims from Human Genome Sciences Australian Patent Publication No. 708972. I observe the following claiming conventions employed by HGS with respect to that invention, which were not employed with respect to the VEGF2 invention of the opposed application:

> When claiming homologues or analogues of a reference sequence, the claims include a "percent identical" limitation which restricts the amount of variation permitted from the original sequence. See, e.g., claim 1, part (h), or claim 6: claim 1 part (n) ("capable of hybridizing . . . and which is at least 70% identical"). Also when claiming variants, claims include a "conservative" limitation which restricts the types of variations that are introduced. See, e.g., claim 15 part (l) ("variant . . . wherein said variant results from conservative substitutions.")

Percent identity language and conservative substitution language serve to limit the amount of variation that is permitted in the molecule.

3.23.3 I have not reviewed these other patents for their merit and express no opinion about the appropriateness of the scope of their claims. Nor do I express an opinion at this time about whether the foregoing types of limitations would cure defects in the claims of the opposed application. I make reference to these documents only to contrast the claim language that HGS used in them to the claim language used in the opposed application. Dr. Mattick would read

the claims of the opposed application to incorporate hybridization or other limitations found in the text of the application. Dr. Mattick's analysis fails to explain why HGS sometimes chooses to include hybridization limitations, percent identity limitations, and other limitations in patent claims and other times does not, if HGS always intends to have its claims limited by such conditions.

D. **Limitations in the Claims Relating to Antibody Binding and Antibodies Fail to Exclude the Prior Art.**

3.24 Claims 16-20 and 40-45 of the opposed application recite a genus of any polypeptides that would be bound by any antibody that binds VEGF2. I explained in my first declaration that these claims encompass prior art polypeptides. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 2.5 and 2.74-2.75.) I explained that at least some antibodies that were capable of binding to VEGF2 would be capable of binding to prior art polypeptides, and that consequently, antibody binding limitations of claims failed to exclude the prior art. (See OPR1 at 2.5, 2.7.12, and 2.7.15.)

3.25 Dr. Mattick and Dr. Gamble believe that one cannot conclude that these claims are anticipated, in the absence of actual tests showing cross-reactivity, and that the claims cannot be analyzed on a theoretical level. (See, e.g., AJM1 4.31-4.34, 4.40, and 4.48; AJG1 at 7.21.)[5] There are several flaws in Dr. Mattick and Dr. Gamble's analysis.

3.26 First, Dr. Mattick contradicts himself only a few pages later, when he declares that "computer programs were readily available in 1994 to generate" information to identify "all of the antigenic sites on the VEGF-2 molecule." (See AJM1 4.83.) It

---

[5] In paragraph 4.48 Dr. Mattick speaks of whether the amino acid sequence "preferentially binds" a VEGF2 antibody. I'm not sure what "preferential" binding means, and whatever it means, it is not a requirement of the claims. Only "binding" is required by the claims.

makes no sense to urge that antibody binding defies theoretical analysis if computer programs were readily available seven years ago that could identify all antigenic sites on a protein.

3.27 Second, the scientific literature contradicts the conclusions drawn by Drs. Mattick and Gamble. For example, Harlow et al., *Antibodies, a Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press (1988) (cited in the Statement of Grounds and Particulars as a treatise that formed part of the common general knowledge in 1994, and also in OPR1), instructs that synthetic peptides as small as six residues in length "will consistently elicit antibodies that bind to the original protein." (See Harlow at page 76 which is **Exhibit PAWR-4** to this declaration). I explained in my original declaration (OPR1 at 2.74-2.75) and Dr. Gamble has confirmed (AJG1 at 7.13) that the VEGF2 sequence and prior art sequences share at least one or two stretches of 6 or 7 amino acid (100%) identity. According to conventional wisdom, these peptides can be expected to elicit antibodies that bind to "the original protein," from which the peptides were derived. In other words, conventional wisdom in the field is that these peptides can be expected to elicit antibodies which would bind both VEGF2 and also bind to the prior art protein (VEGF or PDGF) that shares the common peptide sequence. The personal opinions expressed by Drs. Mattick and Gamble appear to defy conventional wisdom on this subject.

3.28 Third, Dr. Mattick's opinion that one cannot meaningfully analyze the claim language relating to polypeptides that would bind an antibody that binds VEGF2 on a theoretical level *compels a conclusion that claims 16-20 and 40-45 of the opposed application are indefinite.* When one examines the HGS application, one sees that the inventors *failed to describe any actual antibodies to VEGF2*, yet the claims seem to encompass the theoretical universe of all antibodies that bind VEGF2. The opposed application does not even set forth the proper antibody binding assay to use to determine whether or not a protein is bound by an antibody that binds VEGF2. Thus, like it or not, the claims at issue *require* a theoretical analysis, if they can be given any meaning at all. If a common sense analysis of antibody science cannot be applied to analyze patent claim language, then patent examiners would be required to perform

absurd amounts of laboratory work or otherwise allow any patent claim relating to antibody binding. The public could never know with any certainty whether it was working with an infringing polypeptide because the public could never test it for binding against all VEGF2 antibodies. (See also discussion in paragraphs 5.4-5.4.4, below.)

3.29 Dr. Mattick's and Dr. Gamble's refusals to draw any conclusions about cross-reactivity and antibodies is another example of the double standard that they have applied to this proceeding. Scientists have decades of experience making and using antibodies, and the experience permits scientists to make predictions about cross-reactivity. For example, scientists would predict that if a first polypeptide has an epitope of about six amino acids, then an antibody to that epitope would probably bind the same six amino acid epitope of a second polypeptide. (See OPR 2.5.) There is a clear incongruity if Dr. Mattick refuses to draw conclusions about antibody binding on a theoretical level, but is willing to believe totally unsupported statements in the opposed application that VEGF2 fragments can be used to treat cancer and all of the other diseases and conditions listed in the opposed application. (See AJM1 4.19-4.24.) Predictions of antibody cross-reactivity due to common epitopes is at least as reliable as predictions of biological activity based on only 22-30% sequence identity, which the HGS application makes and the HGS declarants appear to accept on faith.

3.30 In my analysis of the prior art and novelty issues in my first declaration, I explained that scientists would not normally consider the immunogenicity of a protein to constitute a "biological activity" of the protein. (See OPR1 2.7.4) HGS challenges this position in its evidence in answer. (See, e.g., AJM1 4.45-4.46; ANH1 at 4.13)

3.31 At the outset, I would like to make clear that if immunogenicity constitutes a VEGF2 biological activity, then this only creates an additional reason why claims in the opposed application with "activity" limitations are not novel, as I explain in my first declaration. (OPR1 at 2.7.4.) The VEGF2 polypeptides will be expected to generate some of the same antibodies that are generated by prior art polypeptides.

3.32 HGS has called my explanation (that immunogenicity is not a "biological activity" of a putative growth factor) "spurious." (AJM1 at 4.45-4.46) The plain fact is that when scientists and doctors wish to develop a protein-based therapy, immunogenicity is an undesirable side-effect, and not a "biological activity". By way of illustration, I shall suppose that the biological activity of VEGF2 in the human body is to heal wounds. If one wants to administer VEGF2 as a pharmaceutical to treat wounds, then it is absolutely essential that the VEGF2 NOT be immunogenic. The consequences of VEGF2 being immunogenic (causing the body to make antibodies to VEGF2) could be catastrophic. For example, the antibodies that the body creates would be expected to neutralize the VEGF2 pharmaceutical that was administered. In addition, and more seriously, the body would continue to make VEGF2 antibodies which would neutralize the body's own VEGF2, making it harder or impossible for the body to naturally heal future wounds. In effect, patients being treated with VEGF2 to heal a wound would, as a side-effect, develop a potentially permanent and catastrophic auto-immune disorder. My illustration shows why an immune response to growth factor therapy would be considered highly undesirable. This illustrates by example why persons skilled in the art do not classify immunogenicity of a polypeptide (the ability to raise antibodies to it) together with those functions (e.g., growth factor functions) that are conventionally referred to as biological activities.

3.33 By way of additional illustration, I refer to **Exhibit PAWR-5** (Skolnick and Fetrow, "From genes to protein structure to function: novel applications of computational approaches in the genomic era," *TIBTECH*, 18:34 (2000)), a relatively recent review article in the field of genomics that explores such issues as predicting what a protein does based on a protein sequence deduced from a DNA sequence. On page 34, the authors address the question, "What do we mean by protein function, the focus of this article?" The authors suggest function can have many levels and meanings, e.g., depending on whether one is looking at the protein function at a molecular level, physiological or metabolic level, cellular or phenotypic level, or the like. However, the ability to make antibodies to polypeptides is not among them.

E. Reply to Miscellaneous Specific Comments of the Evidence-in Answer

3.34 I offer the following additional comments to particular declarations in the HGS evidence in answer that appear to relate to the issues of novelty and inventive step.

a. AJM1 4.40

3.35 Dr. Mattick declared as follows:

> "In paragraph 2.7 Associate Professor Rogers refers to a number of publications, which he says teach the subject matter claimed in the patent specification. I have reviewed each of documents D1, D5, D7, D12, D16, D18, D19, D20, D29, D34, D35, D36, D39 and D41. None of these documents describe VEGF-2." (AJM1 4.40)

3.36 This statement is not relevant to whether the claimed invention is novel. In my first declaration, I explained in detail that *the claims are not limited to VEGF2* molecules, and that the aforementioned documents describe molecules that fall within the scope of the very broad claims. (See OPR1 at 2.7.)

3.37 Dr. Mattick further declared as follows:

> "Further, to the extent that one or more of the claims in the patent specification might include a polypeptide that binds an antibody that binds to VEGF-2 I note that none of these publications describe an antibody that binds to VEGF-2 or establishes cross-reactivity between VEGF-2 antibodies and VEGF antibodies. These documents refer to such subject matter as VEGF, PDGF and PIGF." (AJM1 4.40)

3.38 This statement also is not relevant to the novelty of the polypeptide claims. To the extent that these publications disclose *a polypeptide* that binds an antibody that binds VEGF2, these publications destroy the novelty of the claims which recite this language. The fact that these publications use other names (VEGF, PDGF, PlGF) has no bearing on whether VEGF2 antibodies bind the polypeptides disclosed therein.

b. AJM1 4.43

3.39 Dr. Mattick declared as follows:

> "The patent specification clearly identifies an isolated mRNA encoding VEGF-2. For example, Example 1 and Figures 4 and 5 of the patent specification teaches the isolation and detection of an mRNA species (see also the patent specification at page 27, lines 4 to 32). Furthermore, the isolation of VEGF-2 genomic DNA would have been a routine and straightforward task in 1994 for any person of ordinary skill in the field of molecular biology given the information in the patent specification." (AJM1 4.43)

3.40 I establish in my first declaration that the RNA allegedly identified in Example 1 does not appear to be a real mRNA from the gene that encodes VEGF2. (See OPR1 at 4.13.1 and 5.8.10.) Moreover, whatever RNA was observed in Example 1 was observed in a mixture of RNAs that were electrophoresed on a gel. The example does not describe an isolation. With respect to the genomic DNA, I observe that the genomic DNA that encodes VEGF2 encodes a protein of 419 codons, but the patent application only taught about 350 codons. When HGS discovered the missing 69 codons, they filed a second patent application.

c. AJM1 4.53-4.54; AJG1 7.30 - 7.31

3.41 Dr. Mattick declared as follows:

> "In paragraph 2.7.18 Associate Professor Rogers states:
>
> > "...the claims directed to antagonists of VEGF-2 are not novel over prior art disclosures of forms of the receptors to which VEGF-2 could bind, but could not signal. See Document D27 (disclosing a dominant negative Flk-1 protein)."

> "I can find no evidence in document D27 which establishes that the dominant negative Flk-1 protein described could bind VEGF-2. I observe that the dominant negative Flk-1 receptor described in D27 is created by deleting a significant portion of the intracellular kinase binding domain from part of one of the Flk-1 proteins that forms the receptor. Such a deletion may well inhibit binding of VEGF-2. In my opinion, no conclusions can be drawn from D27 about whether a dominant negative Flk-1 protein might serve as a VEGF-2 antagonist." (AJM1 4.53-4.54.)

3.42 When Dr. Mattick quoted my first declaration, his cropping changed the context entirely. I prefaced the quoted remark with the statement, "Assuming *arguendo* that VEGF2 as taught in the specification possesses any biological activity that is mediated through cell surface receptors . . . ." VEGF and many other growth factors exert their activity through cell surface receptors. However, there is no evidence in the opposed application that VEGF2 acts as a growth factor for anything, or binds any receptors. That is why I prefaced my remark as I did.

3.43 Of course Dr. Mattick can find no evidence in document D27 to establish that VEGF2 binds Flk-1. As I explain in the preceding paragraph, there is no evidence even in the opposed application that VEGF2 binds any receptor or possesses any activity.

3.44 However, there is evidence from Dr. Alitalo's group that mature VEGF-C binds and exerts its activities through the receptors Flk-1/VEGFR-2 and Flt4/VEGFR-3. (See OPR1 at 4.11.1.3; Documents 70 and 71.) I raise Document D27 as prior art only if HGS's scientists continue to believe that VEGF2 molecules possess any biological activities mediated through one or both of these receptors.

3.45 Dr. Mattick's observation that a significant portion of the tyrosine kinase domain of Flk-1 was deleted to create the dominant negative mutant, and suggestion that the deletion "may well inhibit" binding of VEGF-2 is spurious. The ligand growth factors of Flk-1 are well known to bind the extracellular portion of Flk-1, and not the

intracellular tyrosine kinase domain that was deleted in Document D27 (see, for example, Chiang and Flanagan (Growth Factors 1995;12(1):1-10); Tessler *et al.* (J. Biol. Chem. 1994 Apr 29;269(17):12456-61) and Fuh *et al.* (J. Biol. Chem. 1998 May 1;273(18):11197-204), which are attached hereto as **Exhibits PAWR-6, PAWR-7 and PAWR-8**, respectively. It has been shown that VEGF-C molecules that can bind Flk-1 can bind a truncated version lacking the Flk-1 tyrosine kinase domain (see, for example, Document D71).

d. AJM1 4.55-4.60; AJG1 7.30 - 7.33

3.46 Dr. Mattick and Dr. Gamble declare that claim 50 is free of the prior art on the basis that the claimed antagonists must be "specific for" VEGF-2 polypeptides. (AJM1 4.56; AJG1 7.31) They misread the claim. Claim 50 is directed to an antagonist specific for the polypeptide according to any one of claims 28-48. I establish in my first declaration that claims 28-48 are not limited to VEGF-2 polypeptides, but rather, include prior art polypeptides as well. (See OPR1 at 2.7.9 and 2.7.11-2.7.15.) Because claims 28-48 are not restricted to VEGF2, the antagonist of claim 50 is not specific for VEGF2.

3.47 Dr. Mattick and Dr. Gamble misread claims 51-52 in the same way. (AJM1 4.57-4.58; AJG1 7.32-7.33) These claims are not limited to treating a patient with a VEGF-2 protein, but rather with "a polypeptide according to claim 28" or an antagonist thereof. Claim 28 reads on the prior art proteins and antagonists as well as on VEGF-2 (see OPR1 at 2.7.9), and consequently, claims 51-52 read on uses of the prior art proteins or antagonists, as I explain in my first declaration.

3.48 In paragraphs 4.59-4.60, Dr Mattick misreads claims 57-61 in the same way, because he believes that the earlier claims to which they refer are limited to VEGF-2 subject matter, which they are not. (See OPR1 at 2.7.21.)

e. AJG1 7.34 - 7.35

3.49 In paragraphs 7.34 - 7.35, Dr. Gamble appears to be responding to my explanation (in OPR1 2.7.20) that claim 56 encompasses the prior art. However, she only addresses

one observation regarding the absence of working examples. She does not dispute my analysis or conclusion regarding the claim encompassing the prior art.

F. **Important uncontested aspects of my first declaration.**

3.50 In Sections A-D, above, I explain that the arguments in support of novelty and invention provided by the HGS declarants are not persuasive because they do not relate to what was actually claimed, or because they rely upon unworkable claim interpretations, or other reasons. In Section E I address what I believe to be the only other arguments in support of novelty and invention provided by the HGS declarants.

3.51 To conclude my evaluation of the HGS evidence-in-answer as it relates to novelty and invention, I believe it is worthwhile to identify other uncontested points of my first declaration. In particular, there are many claims that introduce limitations not directly related to VEGF2, such as limitations relating to a heterologous polypeptide (claim 21); limitations relating to vectors, host cells, and methods of production (claims 22-27); limitations relating to use of pharmaceutical carriers (claim 53); limitations relating homo-dimerization (claim 47); and limitations relating glycosylation (claim 48). I explained in my first declaration that none of these claims/limitations confer novelty or invention to any claims that otherwise encompassed the prior art. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 2.7.7, 2.7.8, 2.7.10, 2.7.14, and 2.7.15.) I believe that none of the HGS declarants have contested these opinions expressed in my first declaration.

3.52 . Many of the opinions that I offered in my first declaration relating to the issue of inventive step appear to have been uncontested by any HGS declarant. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 3.4 - 3.7.)

LACK OF FAIR BASIS AND INSUFFICIENCY

4.1 In Sections 4 and 5 of my first declaration (OPR1), I explained that the opposed application described an incomplete and non-working invention -- a description that was not adequate to practice the invention as claimed, and that certainly was not

commensurate in scope with the breadth of the claims that HGS was asking the Patent Office to grant to them. For example, I explained that there were defects in the application relating to the biological deposit and the description of experiments in the "Examples", and that the results reported in at least one example had been discredited in the scientific literature. I explained that "VEGF2" as taught in the opposed application was incomplete, could not be expressed and secreted as a protein as HGS had instructed in the opposed application, and that there was no evidence that the incomplete VEGF2 had any of the activity alleged in the application. The limited nature of HGS's contribution (sequencing of an (incomplete) cDNA, doing a database sequence comparison, and doing a Northern blot mRNA expression study) was not adequate to predict structure or function of the VEGF2 protein alleged as the invention. It certainly was not commensurate in scope with the amount of experimentation needed simply to make the invention work. I explained that the protein that the human body produces *in real life* from the VEGF2 gene has a structure vastly different from anything taught by HGS in the opposed application, and that the protein's principal function in adult tissues appears to be in regulation of the lymphatic system, a function that completely eluded the HGS inventors and was not suggested in the patent application. (The protein's structure and function were elucidated by Alitalo et al., a group that has since been awarded multiple patents on their work.) I explained that many of the HGS claims were not based on the application as it was filed, but rather, were an attempt to capture inventions such as those of Alitalo et al. that were published during the pendency of the opposed application before the Patent Office, but that owed nothing to the contributions embodied in the opposed application.

4.2 In this section of my declaration, I reply to the HGS evidence-in-answer that appears to relate to the issues of Lack of Fair Basis or Insufficiency. The declarations offered by HGS usually failed to identify which issue they were answering. Accordingly, I have attempted to reply to all such issues in a single section of this declaration.

A. ADMISSIONS AND UNCONTESTED EVIDENCE

A1. Admissions that the invention was incomplete.

4.3 Many of the HGS declarants have admitted for the record that VEGF2 as taught in the patent application is incomplete. Thus the opposed application did not provide the public with a complete invention. The HGS declarants admit that the beginning of the VEGF2 polynucleotide and polypeptide molecules, including the true VEGF2 signal sequence, was missing from the application as filed, and thus, that the teaching in the application that the first 24 of 350 amino acids represent a signal sequence, with mature VEGF2 being 326 amino acids, was simply incorrect.

4.3.1 Dr. Mattick: "the fact that the signal sequence information was incomplete" (AJM1 at 4.13.)[6]

---

[6]Dr. Mattick admitted in his declaration that "An important difficulty that researchers faced in 1994 (and still face today) is the process of determining what a new gene encodes. This involves careful consideration and scientific training, and it is not a simple or straightforward process. Importantly, the isolation of a DNA sequence does not guarantee sufficient information to establish whether the sequence encodes a protein or if it does, the nature and function of the protein it might encode. Such information had to be determined in 1994 (as it is today) by a researcher using scientific skill, their experience, their knowledge and often a wide range of different analytical and experimental tools." (AJM1 at 3.13) Dr. Mattick declared that "once a DNA sequence had been cloned, further manipulations of that sequence would be relatively routine practice. Moreover once a protein sequence had been identified there were many routine methods available for analysing that protein." (AJM1 at 3.14.) When reading the declarations filed by HGS, it is important to remember that the inventors HAD NOT YET CLONED THE COMPLETE VEGF2 GENE. (In fact, the applicants filed a second patent application, more than a year later, when the inventors realized that the VEGF2 gene was incomplete.) Many of the techniques available for analyzing DNA and protein would have been fruitless if applied to VEGF2 taught in the opposed application, because VEGF2 was incomplete.

4.3.2 Dr. Gamble: "I note that a portion of the full length VEGF-2 sequence, which is not disclosed in the patent specification, is part of the NH2 (amino) terminal end of the full length polypeptide sequence. This equates to 69 amino acids . . . . [The VEGF-2 signal] sequence is located among the 69 amino acids that were not disclosed in the patent specification." (AJG1 at 6.4.)

4.3.3 Dr. Hayward: "The patent specification discloses 350 amino acids of the VEGF-2 sequence whereas it has subsequently been determined that VEGF-2 has 419 amino acids. The missing amino acid sequence is now known to contain the signal sequence that directs secretion of VEGF-2 from the cell." (ANH1 at 3.13.)

4.3.4 Dr. Rapoport: "[T]he 350 amino acid form of VEGF2 corresponds to amino acid residues 70 to 419 of the 419 form of VEGF2." (ATR1 at 8).

4.4 Many of the HGS declarants then devote substantial material to explaining that they would have eventually experimented sufficiently to make alternate molecules (e.g., foreign signal sequences attached to either a 350 amino acid VEGF2 or a 373 amino acid VEGF2) that the opposed application simply fails to teach. Such experimentation is beyond the teachings of the application, which is limited to relatively straight-forward partial cloning and sequencing work..

4.5 In fact, a strikingly large percentage of the evidence-in-answer is devoted to discussions of experiments that the declarants might have thought to have performed back in 1994, if provided with the teachings of the opposed patent application, in order to try to make or use the VEGF2 invention. I have tried to catalogue some of the numerous paragraphs in the evidence-in-answer devoted to such "obvious experimentation" to demonstrate its magnitude. (See **Exhibit PAWR-9** to this declaration.) The extensive experimentation that HGS's experts would have needed

to perform validates my previous declaration setting forth that the opposed application lacks a disclosure adequate to place the public in possession of what is claimed as the invention. The large quantity of experimentation suggested, which the declarants for the most part have not actually performed to see if it would work, would not be needed at all if the invention worked in the manner described in the opposed application. I discuss some of the details of the proposed experiments further below.

4.6 Especially noteworthy is the large amount of experimentation devoted to figuring out that the application was wrong, and how to correct it. I explain in detail below that, even if all of the experimentation would have eventually resulted in a working invention, it would no longer be the invention of the opposed application. The experimentation suggested by HGS's declarations proceeds in a different direction.

A.2 Admission that VEGF2 is too distantly related to prior art molecules to reliably predict structure of function.

4.7 The opposed application is devoid of any evidence of VEGF2 activity. Instead, it predicts that VEGF2 will have the activities that others had shown for VEGF or for the PDGF's. In my first declaration I carefully explained that 22-30% amino acid identity between proteins would not have been considered sufficient to predict biological activity, and gave many examples. (See OPR1 at 4.6.3 - 4.6.5.) None of HGS's declarants explicitly disagreed with this position. In a statement that could be construed as partial agreement, Dr. Hayward declared "that there is not sufficient sequence identity between VEGF-2 and PDGF, VEGF and PIGF (as is clearly demonstrated in Figure 2) for these molecules to be considered derivatives of VEGF-2." (ANH1 at 3.8; see also ANH1 at 4.11 ("lack of detectable homology").

4.8 In fact, Dr. Gamble characterizes the homologies at the amino acid level between VEGF, PDGFα, PDGFβ, and VEGF-2 as very low, with significant differences between the molecules, and very few stretches of significant contiguous amino acid sequences:

> When regard is had to the information provided in the patent specification one observes that the homologies at the amino acid level between VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb and VEGF-2 are very low. The identity between VEGF-2 and each of VEGF, PDGFa, PDGFb is 30%, 23% and 22% respectively (see page 5 of the patent specification). Further, there are very few contiguous sequences of amino acids that are identical between VEGF-2 and each of VEGF, PDGFa or PDGFb (see Figure 2 of the patent specification) In fact, the largest single contiguous sequence of amino acids is only seven amino acids in length and is found in the signature motif, which is identified by a box in Figure 2. After that stretch of residues there is one other stretch of six contiguous amino acids but no other significant contiguous amino acid sequences that share identity between VEGF-2 and VEGF, PDGFa or PDGFb. Thus, at the primary amino acid level there are significant differences between VEGF-2 and VEGF, PDGFa or PDGFb. (AJG1 7.13.)

4.9 I believe her characterization supports nicely the point that I made in my first declaration, that the low similarity and significant differences between VEGF2 and VEGF or the PDGF's would not permit reliable prediction of structure or function.

4.10 Similarly, Dr. Hayward says that "there is not sufficient sequence identity between VEGF-2 and PDGF, VEGF and PlGF (as is clearly demonstrated in Figure 2) for these molecules to be considered derivatives of VEGF-2." I interpret his statement to be an agreement that 22-30% sequence identity is too low for a person to have concluded that proteins would share the same function.

4.11 In my first declaration I explained that the examples in the application contained errors and omissions. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 4.13-4.13.5.) My analysis is essentially uncontested by the HGS declarants. In some instances, HGS's declarants confirm that there are errors and omissions. (See, e.g., ANH1 4.27; AJM1 4.90-4.92.)

B. MERE CATALOGUING IS NOT EVIDENCE AND DOES NOT ANSWER MY INITIAL CRITICISMS OF THE OPPOSED APPLICATIONS

4.12 Significant portions of the evidence-in-answer are devoted to highlighting the many general molecular biological techniques allegedly taught in the opposed application. (See, e.g., AJM1 at 3.12-3.19; 3.29, 3.31, 4.71; and 4.83; AJG 6.8-6.8.11; ANH1 at 3.6, 3.11, 3.21.) I acknowledged in my first declaration that the HGS application contains such "stock" teachings that HGS apparently chooses to include in many of its molecular biology patent applications, irrespective of the inventors and irrespective of the invention described and claimed. (OPR1 at 4.6.2.1.) I also set forth in detail many specific deficiencies of the opposed application which are not cured by regurgitation of standard molecular biological techniques. I maintain my opinion that the invitation in the opposed application to conduct further experimentation using standard molecular biological techniques does not cure the failure to adequately describe the VEGF2 invention in a manner commensurate with which HGS has attempted to claim it. No matter how much attention HGS draws to its stock teachings, they remain nothing more than an *invitation to experiment* and not a teaching of a complete VEGF2 invention. The amount of experimentation that HGS has left for the Australian public to perform in order to determine the true structure of the VEGF2 gene and protein, a working method of expressing and secreting the protein, and a proper identification of its biological activities vastly outweighs the amount of experimentation that HGS conducted before it filed its application on the incomplete VEGF2 gene. The experimentation is not merely routine work to make the invention work in the manner taught by the application. Rather, it is experimentation to discover something that is not described in the application, and how to make it work.

4.13 Significant portions of the evidence-in-answer are devoted to repetition of various predictions in the patent application that are unsupported in the application by scientific evidence, or even by a sound basis for prediction. I have attempted to catalogue some of these portions of the evidence-in-answer in **Exhibit PAWR-10** to this declaration. I acknowledged in my first declaration that the HGS application contains such predictions. (OPR1 at 2.3.3 and 4.6.5.) I also set forth in detail that these were nothing more than predictions, lacking any apparent basis in scientific experiments. (OPR1 at 4.6.3.1 and 4.6.5.) I also set forth in detail that there was no accepted scientific basis for the predictions. (OPR1 at 4.6.3.1 and 4.6.5.) The evidence-in-opposition also included scientific evidence that many of the predictions were simply wrong. (OPR1 at 4.6.4 and 4.6.5.) The many specific deficiencies of the opposed application are not cured by regurgitation of the inventors' predictions in the evidence-in-answer, without critical evaluation of whether they have basis in fact. I maintain my opinion that the invitation in the opposed application to conduct further experimentation to determine how to make and use the invention, by seeing which (if any) predictions were correct does not cure the failure to adequately describe the VEGF2 invention in a manner commensurate with which HGS has attempted to claim it.

C. THE LARGE BODY OF EXPERIMENTATION EMBODIED IN THE HGS EVIDENCE CONCLUSIVELY PROVES THAT THE OPPOSED APPLICATION WAS INCOMPLETE AND INADEQUATE.

4.14 In this section I explain in greater detail that much of HGS's evidence-in-answer actually supports Ludwig Institute's opposition by confirming that the invention does **not** work as taught, and demonstrating that substantial experimentation and ingenuity would have been required to make the invention work. In many cases, the proposed experiments would have required ingenuity to contravene plain teachings in the application, after experimentally determining that the invention does not work as taught. In other cases, the ingenuity was of sufficient character that at least HGS believed that it warranted the filing of additional patent applications. In other cases,

the ingenuity was of sufficient character that other parties filed and were awarded patents on the work.

C1. Experimentation Needed to Make VEGF2 Polypeptides

4.15 I have reviewed the two declarations of Professor Alitalo where he performed controlled experiments to determine whether the approximately 350 amino acid VEGF2 taught in the opposed application can be expressed and secreted as a mature VEGF2 in the manner taught by the application.

4.16 In my opinion, Professor Alitalo's experiments were designed as an accurate reflection of what the patent application teaches to scientists in the field of the invention. The application teaches that the approximately 350 amino acid VEGF2 comprises a leader (signal) sequence of approximately 24 amino acids that would direct secretion of a mature VEGF2 of about 326 amino acids. Dr. Alitalo's experiments were designed to see if the encoding cDNA could be expressed and secreted as taught in the opposed application.

4.17 Dr. Alitalo's experimental results demonstrate that VEGF2 is not expressed and secreted as taught in the application. The design of the experiments was sound, and the results are clear. Knowing what we now know in year 2001 about VEGF2, an obvious explanation for the lack of expression is that the construct in the patent application lacks a signal peptide. The opposed application teaches an incorrect and nonfunctional signal peptide. It is not clear to me whether this error was ever brought to the Patent Office's attention before the opposition proceeding instituted by Ludwig Institute.

4.18 In fact, I think the declarations filed by HGS reflect silent recognition that the application was completely wrong about VEGF2, because the HGS declarants admit that the true signal peptide is missing, and then discuss alternative ways of expressing VEGF2 that are NOT taught in the application.

4.19 For example, Dr. Mattick admits "the fact that the signal sequence information was incomplete" at paragraph 4.13. In fact, he begins his detailed explanation of how he might have successfully expressed VEGF2 *with the assumption that an attempt to express the VEGF2 protein using the putative secretion signal sequence identified in the patent specification would not work.* (See AJM1 4.5, and ensuing discussion in paragraphs 4.6-4.13; see also AJM1 4.76-4.78.) In the ensuing discussion, Dr. Mattick goes on to explain how he would have deduced from the opposed application to express an approximately 373 amino acid VEGF2 sequence using a heterologous signal peptide (AJM1 4.7-4.8), even though he acknowledges in the very next paragraph that the application teaches only to attach a heterologous signal to "the mature sequence." (AJM1 4.9)

4.20 The 373 amino acid construct that Dr. Mattick says that he would eventually have made is not described in the application at all. The application actually only teaches an approximately 350 amino acid full length VEGF2 and mature VEGF2 of 326 amino acids. Viewed in the manner most charitable to HGS, Dr. Mattick has said that, after determining (or being told) that the invention described in the patent application does not work, he might have been able to design some experiments to make an embodiment that is not described anywhere in the application, but that he thinks could work. And there is no indication that he has performed these experiments to see if they really do work.

4.21 Dr. Gamble makes the same admission as Dr. Mattick that the VEGF2 invention is incomplete: "I note that a portion of the full length VEGF-2 sequence, which is not disclosed in the patent specification, is part of the NH2 (amino) terminal end of the full length polypeptide sequence. This equates to 69 amino acids . . . . [The VEGF-2 signal] sequence is located among the 69 amino acids that were not disclosed in the patent specification." (AJG1 at 6.4.) Like Dr. Mattick, Dr. Gamble assumes (with hindsight) that she would have had knowledge of this defect in the patent application, and explains that "The mere fact that the sequence disclosed in the patent application does not include the first 69 amino acids of the full-length VEGF-2 sequence would not dissuade me from attempting to express the sequence disclosed in the patent

specification with a heterologous signal sequence." (AJG1 at 6.5.) Thus, Dr. Gamble apparently would have tried to attach a heterologous signal sequence to the approximately 350 amino acids of VEGF2 disclosed in the patent application. Dr. Hayward says he would have used a similar approach. (See ANH1 at 4.20.)

4.22 Dr. Hayward's declaration of how he would have made VEGF2 polypeptides is redundant to the Gamble and Mattick declarations. Dr. Hayward, like Dr. Mattick and Dr. Gamble, admits that the VEGF2 taught in the patent application is incomplete, missing a large portion of the amino terminus which "is now known to contain the signal sequence . . . ." (ANH1 3.13.) Like Dr. Mattick, he says that he would have read the application as providing 373 amino acids, even though it explicitly states that VEGF2 is only 350. (ANH1 at 3.14.) Like Dr. Gamble, he says that he would have experimented and eventually attempted to express the 350 amino acids with a heterologous signal sequence, even though the application taught that the 350 amino acids already contained a signal sequence. (ANH1 at 3.20-3.26) Like Dr. Mattick, he says that *if* the 350 amino acid VEGF2 as taught in the patent application could not be expressed and secreted, *then* he would have begun experimenting to attempt to figure out what was wrong. (ANH1 at 3.17)

4.23 Dr. Rapoport provides a similar, redundant explanation. He says that all secreted proteins have easily recognizable signal sequences (ATR1 at 4-6), but does not see such a sequence in VEGF2 of the application. (ATR1 at 10.) Instead of concluding that VEGF2 is not secreted, he says he would have had great confidence that VEGF2 was secreted, and would therefore have attached a "strong" foreign signal sequence to 350 amino acid VEGF2. (ATR1 at 12.) He declares that "this approach is specifically taught in the HGS patent specification" at page 14, but it is not. Nothing in the opposed application would fairly be read to teach attaching a heterologous signal sequence to the portion of VEGF2 that was identified in the application as a signal sequence. Such signal peptide redundancy makes no sense when recombinantly expressing polypeptides.

4.24 The experimentation suggested by all of these declarants is not taught or even suggested by the opposed patent application, but rather is driven by hindsight knowledge of information published after the opposed application was filed. (See discussion below (subpart D) at paragraphs 4.55-4.66, repeated here by reference.)

4.25 Before leaving the topic of the VEGF2 expression experiments suggested by Drs. Mattick, Gamble, Hayward and Rappaport, I believe it is important to re-emphasize that they do not even attempt to reproduce the invention described in the opposed application. In fact, it is ironic that the four experts would read an application that taught mature VEGF2 is 326 amino acids, and then be motivated to make a construct comprising a foreign signal peptide attached to VEGF2 of 350 or 373 amino acids. The results of such experiments should have no bearing on the adequacy of the opposed application's teachings, because they are neither disclosed nor suggested in the opposed application. As I explain above, the approaches suggested by all of the HGS declarants reflect an unspoken admission that the invention does not work as taught in the opposed application. Whether or not the HGS declarants approve of Professor Alitalo's experiments described in his two declarations, they seem to recognize that his results are accurate, because they have abandoned the teachings of the application and are now advocating expression strategies that are not in the application.

4.26 Dr. Mattick, Dr. Gamble, Dr. Hayward and Dr. Rapoport all cite U.S. Patent No. 6,130,071, issued to Alitalo et al., as evidence that VEGF2 could be produced using the experimental approaches he has outlined in his declaration. (See AJM1 4.12; AJG1 6.5; ANH1 4.20; and ATR1 at 13)[7] In my opinion, the Alitalo patent only serves as evidence that all of the extra work that the HGS declarants are describing is *inventive work by another*, and not routine work that should be credited to the opposed application of HGS. I observe in the "References Cited" portion of the

---

[7]Dr. Rapoport also relies on Dr. Alitalo's published journal articles, relating to VEGF-C. (*See*, ATR1 at 13-15).

relevant patent the citation of Documents D43, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,932,540, 5,935,820 (**Documents D92 and Exhibit PAWR-11** respectively), and International Publication No. WO 95/24473 (**Exhibit PAWR-12**), all of which are related in some manner to the opposed application. In fact, WO 95/24473 appears to be identical to the opposed application. Ludwig Institute's attorneys have explained to me that, because these documents are listed in the "references cited" section, the documents were considered by the U.S. examiner when deciding to issue U.S. Patent No. 6,130,071. The fact that a U.S. patent examiner considered the invention of 6,130,071, filed in 1997, to be patentable after considering the contents of the opposed application (in the aforementioned documents), suggests to me that the work described in that patent is inventive work of others, and owes little or nothing to the teachings of the opposed application. Patented work of others can not reflect the efforts of routine experimentation.

4.27 Moreover, it is not clear to me how the content of U.S Patent No. 6,130,071 could be argued to support the adequacy of the disclosure of the opposed application in any way. The biologically active VEGF-C forms described in the 6,130,071 patent are NOT the 350 or 326 amino acid forms of VEGF2 taught in the opposed application. (Dr. Gamble represented to the Patent Office that they were in AJG1 6.5) Nor are they the 373 amino acid form that Dr. Mattick and Dr. Hayward believe they would have thought to create after reading the opposed application. Nor are activities such as Flt4 receptor stimulation or lymphatic endothelial cell growth factor of the Alitalo patent attributable to the opposed application. Dr. Rapoport premised his analysis on the "understanding that VEGF-2 and VEGF-C are terms used to refer to the same molecule." (ATR1 at 13). At least in the context of the present application, which taught an incomplete VEGF-2, and mistaught the mature molecule, this premise is clearly incorrect. (*See* paragraphs 2.13-2.16, above).

4.28 Also, it should be emphasized that Dr. Alitalo's research group had identified the full length 419 amino acid prepro-VEGF-C and had characterized its biological activities at the time that they filed their 1997 patent application and published their 1997

paper. The notion that this work should be credited to the opposed application, which taught an incomplete protein that is not expressed and secreted and that has never been reported in the literature to have any activity, is unacceptable.

4.29 Dr. Mattick declares that the VEGF2 sequence provided in the patent application "would have allowed me and I believe any person of ordinary skill in the field of molecular biology in 1994 to design specific strategies to obtain any polynucleotide sequence (ie gDNA, mRNA or cDNA) encoding VEGF-2." (AJM1 at 3.34) Dr. Hayward makes a similar declaration. (ANH1 at 3.26 and 4.18.) Of course, "designing strategies" is merely designing experiments for further research, and no guarantee of results. It is only necessary because the invention does not work the way that HGS taught in the opposed application. When HGS eventually isolated a full-length VEGF2 sequence of 419 amino acids, they thought the new result was significant enough to file a brand new series of patent applications. [*See* Documents D44-46 and discussion at OPR1 paragraphs 1.5.1.1-1.5.3.] If Dr. Mattick and Dr. Hayward think that "any" VEGF2 polynucleotide sequence was within routine reach by a person of ordinary skill, they are disagreeing with the inventiveness in HGS's second series of VEGF2 patent applications.

4.30 Dr. Mattick and Dr. Hayward also declare that the patent application's teachings regarding VEGF2 were sufficient to identify and isolate VEGF2 from other species. (*See* AJM1 4.93-4.94; ANH1 at 4.19.) The fact is, the teachings regarding VEGF2 are not even sufficient to provide the public with complete human VEGF2. (See OPR1 at, e.g., 1.5.1.1 and 4.11-4.11.1.3.) When HGS eventually discovered full length human VEGF2, they believed that the discovery was of sufficient magnitude to warrant another series of patent applications. (See Documents D44-D46.) It would have been a much greater leap from incomplete human VEGF2 to complete VEGF2 from other animals. Thus, I cannot agree with Dr. Mattick and Dr. Hayward's evaluation.

C2. Experimentation Regarding VEGF2 Biological Activity

4.31 The preceding paragraphs relate to all of the experimentation that HGS *admits* through its evidence in answer was necessary simply to express VEGF2 polypeptides.[8] That is only *part* of the experimentation that would have been needed to practice the VEGF2 invention, because polypeptides *per se* are not necessarily useful for anything more than a curiosity for further research. It is equally clear from the evidence in answer that further experimentation was needed to figure out exactly what VEGF2 biological activity is. I originally discussed inadequacies of the teachings of the opposed application with respect to VEGF2 biological activity in OPR1 at 2.3.2, 2.7.4, 3.4.2, 4.6, 4.6.1-4.6.5, 4.8, 5.4, 5.5, and 5.9.

4.32 Dr. Mattick discusses VEGF2 biological activity at, e.g., AJM1 4.14-4.24. Dr. Gamble discusses VEGF2 biological activity at, e.g., AJG1 5.14-5.22, 6.7, 7.8-7.11, 7.15-7.18; and 7.28-7.29. Dr. Hayward discusses biological activity at, e.g., ANH1 at 3.6, 3.27-3.36, and 4.3-4.10.

4.33 In paragraph 4.15, Dr. Mattick selects ONE PASSAGE of the opposed application relating to *in vitro* expansion of vascular endothelial cells and says that he would have understood from it that an expected activity of VEGF-2 is to promote growth of vascular endothelial cells in culture. In paragraph 4.16 Dr. Mattick says that, "had I wanted to examine a secreted VEGF-2 protein using other assays relevant for activities specified in the patent specification (see below) I would have identified someone working in the vascular biology or endothelial biology field and I would have asked them for advice about the types of angiogenic assays that were available in 1994 and how to set up the assays, or I would have asked whether they would be prepared to collaborate with me in my research by testing the protein that I had produced." Dr. Gamble similarly selects testing for endothelial cell growth and/or angiogenic activity. (AJG1 5.14-5.22, 6.7, 7.8-7.11, 7.15-7.18, and 7.28-7.29.) Dr. Hayward selects these two functions and a few others. (See, e.g., ANH1 at 3.28-

---

[8]And, as I explain, the polypeptides that HGS's experts would make are not the one taught in the opposed application.

3.29.) Dr. Mattick says he could have used an endothelial growth activity to verify the production of VEGF2. Dr. Gamble says she could have tested VEGF2 activity with such an assay. Dr. Hayward says the testing would have been routine. I find several flaws in their analysis.

4.34 HINDSIGHT. As I explain in detail in my first declaration, endothelial cell growth is only one of a huge number of alleged uses for VEGF2 in the opposed application. Applying the reasoning of the HGS declarants, each one of the uses could have given rise to a number of activity assays. The HGS declarants apparently selected endothelial cell culturing because they (e.g., Dr. Mattick and Dr. Gamble) believe that HGS's subsequent work (*e.g.*, embodied in the HGSII application, Documents D44-D46) shows that this is a valid activity.[9] Even if endothelial cell growth were a true activity of VEGF2, there is nothing *in the opposed application* proving that endothelial cell culture is a good selection, as opposed to, e.g., a bone growth assay, a ligament growth assay, a cementum growth assay, or a collagen growth assay, just to name a few. (See opposed application at p. 17, first paragraph.)

4.35 Dr. Mattick alleges that VEGF2 activity for promoting growth of endothelial cells in culture has been validated:

> "I note that such an activity has subsequently been shown to be something possessed by VEGF-2. I refer to HGS Patent Application 60467/96 (714,484), which shows that VEGF-2 exhibits proliferative effects on vascular endothelial cells (see page 42, line 32 to page 43 line 25 and Figures 8 and 9)." (AJM1 4.15)

4.36 Dr. Mattick should have, but failed to, qualify this remark by explaining that the VEGF2 purportedly tested in HGS's *second* VEGF2 patent application *is a different VEGF2* than the VEGF2 that HGS taught in the opposed application. While Dr.

---

[9]This subsequent work related to polypeptides that were not taught in the opposed application and are not informative about the activity of VEGF2 polypeptides at issue in this proceeding. See paragraph 4.36.

Mattick may not think that this difference is significant, it appears to me that HGS felt that it was significant enough to warrant filing a second VEGF2 patent application. Drawing a conclusion about 326 amino acid mature VEGF2 taught in the opposed application based on data derived from what was allegedly an approximately 374 amino acid VEGF2 is precisely the type of scientific reasoning that HGS's declarants (e.g., Dr. Gamble) would rebuke as highly speculative. The excerpts cited by Dr. Mattick do not permit the conclusion that VEGF2 *taught in the opposed application* is useful for endothelial cell culture.

4.37 Dr. Mattick and Dr. Gamble cite no evidence whatsoever concerning the validation of an angiogenesis assay for the VEGF2 taught in the opposed application.

4.38 The only alleged scientific evidence of VEGF2 biological activity cited by Dr. Mattick, Dr. Gamble, or Dr. Hayward is in Example 1 of the application:

4.38.1 Dr. Mattick: "Further the patent specification provides in Example 1 Northern Blot data (see figure 4) showing that VEGF-2 is over-expressed in breast cancer cell lines. This result indicates to me that VEGF-2 is biologically active in tumours." (AJM1 at 4.18.)

4.38.2 Dr. Gamble: ". . . confirmation that the VEGF-2 sequence described in the specification is expressed in vivo, and therefore likely to indicate a biological activity, is provided in the Examples of the specification where it is shown by Northern blotting that a number of malignant breast tumour cell lines over express VEGF-2. The over expression of VEGF-2 in breast cancer cell lines while absent in a normal breast sample suggests a role of VEGF-2 in tumor development perhaps by promoting the growth of new blood vessels, as was observed for VEGF. (AJG1 7.17. See also AJG1 7.28 - 7.29)

4.38.3 Dr. Hayward: "In Example 1 in the patent specification the inventors demonstrate that VEGF-2 is over expressed in vivo in a number of malignant breast tumour cell lines. This result is, I believe, indicative of VEGF-2 biological activity. It suggests to me that VEGF-2 plays a role in tumour development possibly by promoting new blood vessel growth similar to VEGF. Additionally, it is apparent to me from reading the patent specification as I believe it would be to others in my field that VEGF-2 is a growth factor that is related to VEGF and is likely to play a role in the regulation of endothelial cell mitogenesis." (ANH1 at 4.6)

4.38.4 There are several problems with Dr. Mattick, Dr. Gamble, and Dr. Hayward's conclusions.

4.39 FAULTY EXPERIMENT. I explain in detail in my first declaration that the weight of published scientific experiments indicate that the gene that encodes VEGF2 produces an RNA message substantially bigger than 1.6 Kd, the size reported in Example 1. (See OPR at 4.13.1..) It is not clear to me that Example 1 even contains valid data.

4.40 WHAT IS THE VEGF2? Even if VEGF2 is active in tumors, Example 1 fails to address the question of what VEGF2 molecule we are talking about. The VEGF2 taught in the opposed application is incomplete, and I have never seen any published evidence that the incomplete VEGF2 is expressed and/or secreted in any human cells (healthy or cancerous). Dr. Alitalo's two declarations provide experimental evidence that VEGF2 as taught in the opposed application is not expressed and secreted by cells. Dr. Alitalo's published body of work relating to VEGF-C indicates that molecules very different from VEGF2 (as taught in the opposed application) are expressed *in vivo*. (See, e.g., **Documents D71-D74.**) Just because something might be happening with VEGF2 in tumors does not mean that the incomplete VEGF2 taught in the patent is involved. To the extent that a VEGF2-like molecule is

involved in breast cancer, the molecule might be the 419 amino acid VEGF2 that was the subject of HGS's second VEGF2 patent application, or the VEGF-C proteins that were the subject of Professor Alitalo's patent filings. A Northern hybridization study, even if performed correctly, would not indicate to a scientist what protein forms are present.

4.41 WHAT IS THE ACTIVITY? I shall assume in this paragraph that Dr. Mattick, Dr. Gamble, and Dr. Hayward are correct in concluding from Example 1 that VEGF2 is biologically active in tumors. Unfortunately, a scientist cannot say from a simple Northern hybridization experiment *what that activity actually is*. A correctly run Northern hybridization study tells a scientist whether a particular RNA is present in a sample, and possibly how much of that RNA is present in the sample. Without further experimentation, one cannot know whether the tumors are secreting VEGF2 as a growth factor for tumor cells (autocrine growth factor), or secreting VEGF2 to inhibit further growth of tumor cells, or secreting VEGF2 to stimulate or inhibit growth of some other tissue type, or secreting VEGF2 to kill nearby healthy cells to make room for tumor growth, or secreting VEGF2 to recruit some other cell type to the tumor, or secreting VEGF2 to inhibit immune cells such as tumor infiltrating lymphocytes from attacking the tumor, or any of a myriad of other activities. The scientific reality is that a Northern blot study provides only indirect evidence that a cell might be making a particular protein. It provides no evidence whatsoever as to what activity, if any, the protein is having. To paraphrase Dr. Gamble, any conclusion about VEGF2 activity from a Northern hybridization study, represents "pure speculation" and "cannot reasonably be drawn." Thus the example given in the application does not support the claimed activity.

4.42 In remaining paragraphs 4.19-4.24 Dr. Mattick does nothing more than catalogue the uses alleged for VEGF2 in the opposed application. In my first declaration I explained in detail that there is no sound scientific basis upon which these statements of activity were based or would be trusted by a practitioner in this field (OPR1 at 4.6.3.1 and 4.6.5.), and I repeat those explanations here by reference. As I explain above in paragraph 4.13, repeated here by reference, the cataloging of the activities in

a declaration does not make them more believable — there is still no evidence supporting them. This is precisely the scientific double standard that HGS is asking the public to accept in this proceeding. (See paragraphs 2.2-2.7 above, repeated here by reference.)

4.43 AJM1 Paragraph 4.23 provides a good example of the double standard:

> "On page 24 (lines 25 to 31) the patent specification identifies uses of truncated versions of VEGF-2 for inactivating the activity of endogenous VEGF-2. It also discloses how such truncated molecules may be used therapeutically as anti-cancer drugs, to prevent inflammation or to treat solid tumour growth, diabetic retinopathy, psoriasis and rheumatoid arthritis (page 25 lines 4 to 13)." (AJM 4.23.)

The opposed application describes no polypeptides that are fragments of the approximately 326 amino acid mature VEGF2, and does not identify any polypeptides that were shown or believed to have VEGF2 inhibitory activity.[10] Nor does the application provide any evidence that VEGF2 is involved in cancer in any way. Yet Dr. Mattick believes that the application discloses how truncated VEGF2 molecules may be used as anti-cancer drugs. Treatment of cancer continues to be one of the most researched and persistent problems of medical science, and has been for decades. There is no evidence in the opposed application to support this assertion. In my opinion, scientists with ordinary skill and experience, or higher, would not believe that fragments of a novel polypeptide could be used to treat cancer just because a

---

[10] In paragraph 4.12 Dr. Mattick references "VEGF-C fragments" described in U.S. Patent No. 6,130,071 issued to Alitalo et al. These VEGF-C polypeptides were equated by Dr. Mattick with VEGF2 polypeptides, but of course they are not described in the opposed application and they are active polypeptides, not inhibitory ones.

patent application says so, when there is no disclosure of the activity of the polypeptide and no evidence of involvement of the polypeptides in cancer.

4.44 Dr. Hayward says that it is not reasonable to expect an initial characterization of a gene to provide "a full description, supported by detailed experimental proof, of every property and function that the encoded protein possesses." (ANH1 at 4.8) I agree with that position. However, if an inventor is seeking a patent on a gene, an encoded protein, a variety of "active" variants of the protein and gene, and a variety of uses of the protein and gene and variants, and other subject matter, then it is appropriate to ask the patent applicant to provide a working method for expressing and secreting the protein, and to provide evidence of some portion of the properties or functions. It is not appropriate to award the patent if the patent applicant has left for the public to determine how to make and how to use the invention. However, that is precisely the situation here, where the patent application has not shown how to express and secrete VEGF2 or demonstrated any function for VEGF2.

C3. Experimentation Relating to Inhibition of VEGF2 Activity

4.45 I originally discussed the inadequacies of the opposed application with respect to inhibition of VEGF2 activity in OPR1 at 6.6. Generally speaking, knowledge of a biological activity is a prerequisite to designing ways to inhibit the biological activity. Thus, all of the statements in my original declaration relating to biological activity, and all of the additional remarks on that subject above, are relevant to the lack of fair basis and lack of sufficiency regarding claims which pertain to inhibition of VEGF2.

4.46 AJM1 4.107 - 4.108. Dr. Mattick's remarks in support of inhibition or antagonism of VEGF2 are repetitious of his remarks relating to VEGF2 biological activity, which I discuss extensively above in Section C2 and repeat here by reference.

C4. Is VEGF2 a Lymphatic Growth Factor?

4.47 In my first declaration I discuss published evidence (largely from Professor Alitalo's group) that the principle activity of the real-life protein product of the "VEGF2 gene" in healthy mammals appears to be a growth factor for the lymphatic vessels.[11] This fact appears uncontested in HGS's evidence-in-answer.

4.48 It is also uncontroverted that, notwithstanding the numerous activities prophesied for VEGF2 in the opposed application, the inventors failed to teach that VEGF2 was a lymphatic growth factor. The big list of uses and activities that HGS taught, e.g., at page 16 of its application were simply copied from what other scientists had said about VEGF (See Document D36, U.S. Patent No. 5,219,739 beginning at col. 12, line 5 or PDGF.)

4.49 Dr. Mattick attempts to dismiss this shortcoming by drawing an analogy between characteristics of lymphatic vessels and blood vessels, perhaps implying that the opposed application was generic to both when it discusses endothelialization. (AJM1 4.74-4.75) However, he does not contest that the opposed application is completely silent about lymphatic growth or treatment of lymphatic disorders, and it is clear from the context of the alleged VEGF2 uses in the application that they were not contemplating uses relating to lymphatics. Although a bit crude, I would analogize Dr. Mattick's obscuring the distinction between blood vessels and lymphatic vessels to an auto mechanic obscuring the distinction between an auto's fuel lines and its cooling system. Both systems involve vessels (hoses) and liquid flows, but ordinary people in the field appreciate the significant differences in their functions.

C5. Experimentation Relating to "Examples"

4.50 In paragraph 4.13.1 of my first declaration, I explain that Example 1 of the opposed application has errors and inconsistencies, the most serious of which is that the results

---

[11] I also explain that the opposed application fails to teach the real-life protein product of the VEGF2 gene. [See OPR1 at 4.7.]

which were reported (VEGF2 mRNA of 1.6 kb/kd or 1.3 kb) are discredited by HGS's own subsequent work and work by at least two other independent research groups, which teach that the real mRNA is 2.2-2.4 kb in size. Dr. Mattick spends five paragraphs attempting to rehabilitate Example 1 for HGS (AJM1 4.84-4.88), but he does not contest the fact that HGS's experimental results are just plain wrong. The work reported in Example 1 misinformed the public about the identity and the size of VEGF2 mRNA.

4.51 In paragraph 4.13.2 - 4.13.3 of my first declaration I explain that Example 2 provides information of minimal value to understanding VEGF2 (4.13.2) and that the Example is full of errors and inaccuracies, and is incomplete. (4.13.3) The former is uncontested by Dr. Mattick. With respect to the errors, inaccuracies, and incompleteness, Dr. Mattick spends three paragraphs basically confirming my analysis, admitting that "there are a number of errors" (4.90); that descriptions are "inconsistent" with figures (4.91); that primers are misidentified or not identified at all (4.92); and the like. Dr. Mattick's attempt to rehabilitate the defective Example 2 is just another example of the scientific double standard being applied by HGS's declarants.

4.52 Dr. Hayward spends four paragraphs discussing Example 2 of the opposed application. (ANH1 at 4.26-4.29.) He more or less confirms that Example 2 failed to teach the F5 primer, and that the F4 primer (part of primer pair 2) could not be used to make the polypeptide that was allegedly made. (Dr. Hayward's interpretations of these errors was that F4 as taught in the Example is really F5, and that F4 is missing.) Dr. Hayward declares that he would have been able to carry out experiments similar to those shown in Example 2, but that does not change the plain fact that Example 2 was described inadequately and it would have been left to the reader to experiment simply to try to repeat the "Examples" in the application.

C6. Summary Regarding Experimentation

4.53 To summarize, a large percentage of the evidence-in-answer is comprised of explanations of how the declarants, through experimentation, believe that they could have figured out that the opposed application was plain wrong in its characterization of VEGF2. And, after figuring out that the opposed application was wrong, the scientists believe that they could have performed additional experimentation to characterize VEGF2 correctly and then use it for whatever purposes their experimentation revealed VEGF2 could be used for. Thus, the evidence-in-answer appears to be advocating the position that HGS should be awarded a patent because the patent application would have created curiosity and enthusiasm to experiment, because with substantial experimentation one might have discovered the inaccuracies in the patent application, discovered that the invention does not work as described, and discovered alternatives or improvements that might have worked but that were not taught in the application. The question resolves to one of whether it is fair to grant a patent to the person that teaches an incomplete and incorrect invention that others might eventually be able to complete and use. In my opinion this is not fair. The merits of the patent application should be judged on what it teaches, and not how other scientists feel they could have overcome its substantial shortcomings and errors with experimentation. The fact that such experimentation might have revealed the inaccuracies in the opposed application or revealed alternative inventions to the invention described therein does not cure the errors or inadequacies of the application.

D. INAPPROPRIATE USE OF HINDSIGHT TO MISSTATE THE AMOUNT OF EXPERIMENTATION THAT WOULD HAVE BEEN NEEDED TO MAKE THE INVENTION WORK.

D1. Hindsight with respect to VEGF2 Expression.

4.54 I disagree with much of the evidence-in-answer because it is based on hindsight. In other words, the HGS declarants are drawing conclusions based on what is *now* known about VEGF2 and VEGF-C, based on papers and patents that were published after the filing date of the patent application. In this section I explain the hindsight

and provide a fairer analysis involving only the common general knowledge in 1994, combined with the teachings in the opposed application.

4.55 Dr. Mattick concludes that, even though VEGF2 as taught in the opposed patent contains only about 350 amino acids, "the nucleotide sequence disclosed in Figure 1 may also be read to encode an additional 23 amino acids." (AJM1 at 3.22 and 4.7.) Dr. Hayward drew a similar conclusion. (ANH1 at 3.14 and 4.18.) As I explain below, Dr. Mattick's and Dr. Hayward's conclusion is contrary to the plain teachings of the opposed application. However, it is easy to see how they would have reached this conclusion when one considers documents published after the opposed application, which taught that VEGF2 includes additional amino acids. That is why their analysis is based on hindsight.

4.55.1 Figure 1 of the opposed application, to which Dr. Mattick and Dr. Hayward refer, depicts a DNA sequence and a deduced VEGF2 protein sequence. The opposed application explains Figure 1 as follows: "Fig. 1 depicts the polynucleotide sequence which encodes for VEGF2, and the corresponding deduced amino acid sequence of **the full length VEGF2 polypeptide comprising 350 amino acid residues** of which approximately the first 24 amino acids represent the leader." (Opposed Application at p. 4, lines 28-32.) There is no ambiguity in the opposed application as to the length of **full length VEGF2** or the location of the methionine amino acid at which **full length VEGF2** begins.[12] And there is a clear statement identifying the

---

[12] The opposed application explicitly teaches that the methionine codon at the beginning of the VEGF2 protein-encoding sequence is at approximately positions 71-73 of the DNA sequence in Figure 1. The relationship between a polypeptide and the DNA coding sequence encoding it is a relationship of tri-nucleotide codons: each amino acid is encoded by three nucleotide "codon" units. The DNA strands (chromosomes) that characterize the human genome each comprise hundreds or thousands of protein coding sequences, generally

inventor's belief in the division between the 24 amino acid signal peptide and the "mature" VEGF2 of 326 amino acids.

4.55.2 As I explained in my first declaration, multiple groups, including the very inventors of the opposed application, later refuted the notion that the protein encoded by the VEGF2 gene is only about 350 amino acids. It is, in fact, about 419 amino acids, but the opposed application failed to teach about 69 amino acids at the beginning of the protein. [*See* OPR1 at 4.11.1-4.11.3 (citing Documents D43, D44-46, D84-86 of HGS; D75 and D84 of Genentech; and D71-D74 of University of Helsinki.)][13]

4.55.3 Thus, it is easy to understand how Dr. Mattick or Dr. Hayward could have used hindsight to conclude that the Figure 1 sequence might actually encode more than 350 amino acids, because numerous publications from about 1996-2001 reported this. But the conclusion is clearly biased on what is now known in year 2001, and contrary to the plain teachings of the opposed application.

4.56 Dr. Mattick compounds this hindsight by opining that he would have learned from the patent application to express VEGF2 with these extra 23 amino acids:

> Taking into account the existence of the additional 23 amino acids at the N-terminal end of the VEGF-2 sequence disclosed in the patent specification, I would also have stitched a signal secretion sequence to the

---

separated by stretches of non-coding sequences. Each protein coding sequence begins with the codon ATG, which encodes methionine.

[13]Interestingly, the 373 amino acid VEGF2, which has no basis in the application, also has no apparent significance in human biology. The HGS declarants have acknowledged that the full length VEGF2 (with signal sequence) is actually 419 amino acids. The Alitalo research group has shown that the 373 amino acid molecule is vastly different than the forms of protein secreted by human cells.

> beginning of the cDNA disclosed in the patent specification, as is taught in the patent specification. I note that such an experiment was done and is described in Australian Patent Application 60467/96 (714,484) (HGS' second VEGF-2 patent application) and the resultant product from those experiments is reported to be biologically active (see page 42, line 32 to page 43 line 25 and Figures 8 and 9 -- HGS' second VEGF-2 patent application). (AJM1 4.8)

4.57 The hindsight knowledge of the "additional 23 amino acids" that are not taught in the application is compounded here by a hindsight knowledge gained from HGS's second VEGF2 application to attach a signal peptide to the beginning of the additional 23 amino acids. To the extent the opposed application suggests attaching a foreign signal peptide to a VEGF2 sequence, the suggestion would have been to attach it to "mature VEGF2" which comprised only about 326 amino acids (see opposed application at pp. 4-7). It would have been highly irregular to attempt to attach a signal peptide-encoding sequence to what was taught to be 69 nucleotides of noncoding sequence, because signal sequences are not ordinarily used to drive expression of noncoding sequences. This is especially true when the patent application taught that a true signal sequence immediately followed the 69 nucleotides of noncoding sequence. (Polypeptides don't need two signal peptides for expression and secretion.)

4.58 Dr. Mattick devotes three pages to explaining how he would have expressed VEGF2 using "routine trial and experimentation." However, Dr. Mattick has used hindsight in his explanation because his explanation *begins* from the following assumption:

> "Had I attempted to express the VEGF-2 protein using the putative secretion signal sequence identified in the patent specification and had that not worked . . . ."
> (AJM1 4.5.)

4.59 Dr. Hayward begins his analysis from a similar vantage point. (See ANH1 at 3.17.) The HGS declarants start here because, with hindsight knowledge, they know that the signal sequence taught in the opposed application does not work. However, at the time the patent application was filed, scientists with ordinary knowledge presumably would not have known that the signal sequence taught in the application would not work. Such scientists would have read the teachings in the application concerning the sequence listing, tried to express the polypeptide according to the application, and failed. Then, the person might have repeated his experiment and modified any of a number of parameters (cell type, expression vector, promoter, growth conditions, and so on) to try to discover why things did not work. Extensive experimentation might have been necessary before arriving at the true source of the problem and solution.

4.60 A similar analysis applies to the manner that most of the other HGS declarants say that they would have successfully expressed and secreted a VEGF2 polypeptide. At least Drs. Gamble, Dr. Hayward, and Dr. Rapoport say that, even though the VEGF2 taught in the patent application is incomplete and the portion of the sequence described as the signal is incorrect, they would have expected to be able to successfully express and secrete VEGF2 by attaching a heterologous (foreign) signal sequence to the 350 amino acids of VEGF2 that were taught in the patent application. (See AJG1 at 6.5; ANH1 at 3.20-3.22; ATR1 at 13.) Dr. Power reported that she performed such an experiment (ASP1), and Dr. Aaronson spoke approvingly of that experiment. (See, e.g., ASA1 at 15-22).

4.61 The notion of expressing the 350 amino acid VEGF2 taught in the opposed application with a heterologous (foreign) signal peptide may be an interesting scientific curiosity, but it has nothing to do with the teachings in the opposed patent application. The opposed application teaches the reader that the VEGF2 of about 350 amino acids *already* consists of a leader sequence (i.e., a signal sequence) representing the first approximately 24 amino acids, and a mature protein of 326 amino acids. (See, e.g., page 5 of opposed application.) Scientists in 1994 or today would not have had any reason to express a protein that already contained a signal sequence using a method that involved attaching a heterologous (foreign) signal

sequence (e.g., Dr. Power's Ig Kappa signal sequence) to the beginning of the natural signal sequence. Such an experiment is not a replication of any example in the opposed application or a reasonable extension of any of its teachings. The instructions that HGS gave to Dr. Power for her experiments were not to replicate the teachings of the opposed application. (See ASP1 at 2.) One might infer that HGS gave these instructions because they new that the invention taught in the patent application does not work the way that they said it would. (Dr. Alitalo's first declaration (OKA1) showed this.) And the suggestion by the HGS declarants that they would have identified the cause of the failure without extensive experimentation is based on the hindsight knowledge of what they now believe will work.

4.62 The only ***suggestion*** to perform the experiment of attaching a heterologous (foreign) signal sequence to the 350 amino acid VEGF2 comes from scientific and patent literature regarding VEGF-C or VEGF2 that was published after the filing date of the opposed application. When one reads that literature, one learns that the gene in actuality has 419 codons, and that the 350 codon sequence was incomplete and lacked a signal peptide. (*See* OPR1 at, e.g., 1.5.1.1 and 4.11-4.11.1.3; ATR1 at 8.) One also learns (from the VEGF-C literature) which forms of the molecule have biological functions, such as stimulation of the lymphatic system. Even if the experiments involving a heterologous sequence in combination with 350 amino acid VEGF2 work, the results should not be credited to the opposed application, but rather, to the ingenuity of others who determined that VEGF2 does not work in the manner described in the opposed application, but works in a totally different manner.

4.63 Dr. Rapoport's analysis of the signal peptide issue also suffers from hindsight. For example, Dr. Rapoport declares that it was known that signal sequences located at the N-terminus of proteins "were required to directed secreted proteins outside of the cell." (ATR1 at 4-5). He says that researchers were able to characterize such sequences by inspection or with software. (ATR1 at 5-6). Dr. Rapoport says that he fails to observe a typical conserved motif of a signal sequence in the 350 amino acid VEGF2 taught in the opposed application. (ATR1 at 10.) Given what he says about signal sequences in paragraphs 4-6, one might have expected Dr. Rapoport to

conclude that VEGF2 was not secreted at all. (That would have been a logical inference to make about a protein that does not appear to have a signal sequence.)

4.64 Instead, Dr. Rapoport says that there was "strong evidence" that the 350 amino acid VEGF2 was a secreted protein "based on the teaching and recognition of the HGS specification that it is a member of a family of secreted growth factors." (ATR1 at 10 and 7.)

4.65 However, the "strong evidence" upon which Dr. Rapoport relies does not withstand scrutiny. The only "evidence" is the recognition that VEGF2 exhibited 22-30% identity with VEGF and the PDGF proteins. (ATR1 at 7, 9.) I explained in detail in my first declaration that this low level of sequence identity does not permit reliable prediction of structure or function. (*See* OPR1 at 4.63-4.65.) That portion of my first declaration was not contested by any HGS declarant. There are many examples in the literature of proteins with significantly greater structural similarity, but divergent function. In fact, the examples in my first declaration demonstrate that 22-30% sequence similarity is not even sufficient to be sure that two proteins are both growth factors, or are both secreted from cells. Here are two more examples directly relevant to the field of blood vessel growth:

4.65.1 The angiopoietins comprise a "family" of proteins believed to modulate endothelial cell growth in humans. Although angiopoietins share amino acid identity of, e.g., about 40-70%, some family members appear to stimulate receptors involved in endothelial cell growth, whereas others appear to antagonize (block) them. Thus, angiopoietins share greater sequence similarity with each other than VEGF2 shares with VEGF, but angiopoietins can have directly opposing activities towards each other, with some being growth factors and others being growth factor antagonists.

4.65.2 The fibroblast growth factors (FGF's) comprise another "family" of growth factors. Some, but not all, members of this family have signal peptides for directing secretion of the protein from cells. The FGF's demonstrate that not

all proteins in a particular protein "family" can be expected to have a traditional signal sequence.

4.66 In fact, even if there were sufficient evidence in the opposed application to conclude that VEGF2 were a growth factor, it is untrue that all growth factors are secreted. The ephrins represent yet another "family" of proteins, that like VEGF, have members that appear to play a role in vascular development and interact with their own receptor tyrosine kinases (known as the Eph receptors). All known ephrins are tethered naturally to the cells in which they are expressed, and must normally remain attached to the cell membrane to activate their receptors or other cells. Ephrins B1-B3 all have transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains that localize in the cell's membrane and cytoplasm (interior), respectively.

4.67 The foregoing examples and the uncontested examples from my first declaration demonstrate that Dr. Rapoport had no "strong evidence" upon which he could base his conclusions, except for hindsight knowledge gained from the reported work of HGS's competitors.

4.68 In my opinion, the only true motivation for the research that Dr. Rapoport describes involving foreign signal peptides attached to 330 amino acid VEGF2 comes from knowledge of the 419 amino acid VEGF2 (ATR1 at 8) and published information about VEGF-C (ATR1 at 13-17.) The allegations about what he would have recognized, predicted, and/or expected based solely on the application do not withstand scrutiny.

D2. Hindsight with respect to VEGF2 biological activity.

4.69 I discuss Dr. Mattick's and Dr. Gamble's hindsight with respect to VEGF2 biological activity above in paragraphs 4.27-4.40 which I repeat here by reference.

4.70 Dr. Hayward also exercises hindsight in his discussions of VEGF2 biological activity. (See, e.g., ANH1 at 3.6; 3.27-3.36.) He explains that he understands VEGF2 activity

to mean one select list of functions that are recited in the opposed application (such as angiogenesis or promoting endothelialisation or wound healing) but fails to list other functions, such as growth of damaged bone, periodontium, or ligament tissue as stated at page 17 of the opposed application. (See, e.g., ANH1 at 3.6; 3.28.)

4.71 Dr. Hayward also exercises hindsight by declaring that one of ordinary skill would have considered whether VEGF2 bound to Flt1, Flk1, and Flt4. (See ANH1 at 3.30 - 3.35.) Receptor tyrosine kinases (RTK's) serve as receptors for a large number of molecules, including the PDGF's. My current scientific work includes RTK and RTK inhibitor research, and in my estimation the human genome contains perhaps 500 to 1000 different RTK's (only a small fraction of which would have been characterized in 1994). The suggestion that a person would have focused on only those three receptors (Flt1, Flk1, and Flt4) is based on hindsight knowledge that fully processed VEGF-C was shown by Alitalo et al. to bind to two of them. The idea to screen Flt4 or other particular receptors is not found in the application.

E. CLAIMS WHICH RECITE PARTICULAR SUBSETS OF THE VEGF2 SEQUENCE LACK FAIR BASIS AND LACK SUFFICIENCY. REPLY TO AJM1 4.96-4.102 AND AJG 6.8.1-6.8.2.

4.72 In paragraph 5.8.1 - 5.8.6 of my declaration I explained that the opposed application as written provided no indication that the applicants intended to claim the particular sequences of claims 11-12, 32-35, and 40-41, and that the only mention of these portions of VEGF2 were not as peptides, but rather, were as observations that they represented portions sharing conserved motifs with the prior art. Dr. Mattick gleans such an intention from identification of the conserved motifs at page 5 and Figure 2, in combination with the teaching at page 9 about "fragments of VEGF-2." I am not persuaded by this analysis.

4.73 When I read the discussion of page 9 concerning fragments, I see no mention whatsoever of conserved motifs or of the alleged "signature" sequence. When I read page 5 and Figure 2, I see a discussion of the signature motifs but no mention of

VEGF2 fragments of the invention. I only see an observation that VEGF2 shares two attributes with VEGF and PDGF, and neither attribute is actually a VEGF2 "fragment."[14] Nowhere in the application is the "signature for the PDGF/VEGF family" stated to represent a "VEGF2 fragment" of the invention.

4.74 Dr. Mattick apparently does not dispute my conclusion that claim 31 is entirely unsupported in the application. (See OPR1 at 5.8.7), or my observations in paragraph 5.8.9 regarding failure to adequately teach VEGF2 "activity" information about these peptides, even if they were adequately descibed.

4.75 In paragraph 6.8.1 - 6.8.2 Dr. Gamble summarily states that she believes that the patent specification provides "a range of different length VEGF-2 polypeptides." as well as the DNAs encoding them. For reasons explained in my first declaration and in the preceding paragraphs, I disagree.

F. LACK OF FAIR BASIS OR SUFFICIENCY FOR VEGF2 MRNA.

4.76 In AJM1 4.103 - 4.104, Dr. Mattick responds to my criticism in OPR 5.8.10 that the opposed application lacks support for VEGF2 mRNA because the alleged mRNA in the opposed application is clearly misidentified. Dr. Mattick cites Example 1 as providing support for VEGF2 mRNA. Dr. Hayward provides analysis of Example 1 at ANH1 paragraphs 4.21-4.24.

4.77 I am unpersuaded by Dr. Mattick's and Dr. Hayward's analysis. I note apologetically that OPR 5.8.10 should have referred to Example 1 in the opposed application, rather than Example 2. A review of Example 1 proves my original point. In paragraph 4.13.1 of my first declaration, I explained that Example 1 of the opposed application

---

[14] What I mean by this is that the first attribute - eight conserved cysteines - are scattered throughout the VEGF2 sequence, not a fragment of it. The second attribute is a generic chemical formula PXCVXXXRCXGCCN, not a VEGF2 fragment.

has errors and inconsistencies, the most serious of which is that the results which were reported (VEGF2 mRNA of 1.6 kb/kd or 1.3 kb) are *discredited by HGS's own subsequent work and work by at least two other independent research groups*, which teach that the real mRNA is 2.2-2.4 kb in size. Dr. Mattick relies on Example 1 and spends many paragraphs attempting to rehabilitate Example 1 for HGS (AJM1 4.84-4.88, 4.104), but he does not contest the fact that HGS's experimental results are *just plain wrong*. The work reported in Example 1 misinformed the public about the identity and the size of VEGF2 mRNA.

4.78 Dr. Hayward also does not contest that the 1.6 kb/kd result reported in Example 1 and relied upon by the HGS declarants in various aspects of their declaration is wrong, and discredited by subsequent experiments. However, Dr. Hayward attempts to rehabilitate Example 1 by interpreting a different experimental result, namely Figure 5. Dr. Hayward says that he would judge Figure 5 as showing a band of about 2.4/2.3 kb and a band of 1.6 to 1.8 kb and that "at least the major band is reasonably consistent with subsequent results." (ANH1 4.24).

4.79 Whatever meaning Dr. Hayward can now discern from Figure 5 does not change the fact that HGS attributed no significance to Figure 5 whatsoever when it wrote the opposed application. Nor does his interpretation change the fact that the result upon which the inventors told the public to focus, 1.6 kb/kD, is now discredited.

4.80 Moreover, it's not clear to me that Dr. Hayward's interpretation of Figure 5 is even reliable. He admits that there is at least one mislabeled band (ANH1 at 4.24-4.25) and it appears to me that there may be more than one mislabeled band. There is no basis in the application to determine which of the band inconsistencies in Figure 5 are right or wrong (or whether all are wrong).

G. THE PATENT APPLICATION MIS-TAUGHT VEGF2 PROTEOLYTIC PROCESSING.

4.81 Dr. Gamble devotes several pages of her declaration discussing knowledge of prior art growth factors PDGFs, VEGF, and PlGF, including discussion of proteolytic processing of these proteins. (See AJG1 5.1-5.13.) Her apparent reason for the lengthy discussion of the prior art is an attempt to rehabilitate the teachings of the opposed application relating to VEGF2. (See AJG1 6.1 - 6.5; 7.23-7.24.) Dr. Rapoport's declaration also relies heavily on analogy to VEGF and PDGFs processing for his declaration. (*See, e.g.*, ATR1 at 7, 9, and 11.)

4.82 First, it is important to remember that the opposed application taught an incomplete VEGF2 sequence, missing about 69 codons/amino acids. At least three of HGS's declarants have admitted this important omission from the patent application. (See paragraphs 4.3-4.3.4 above, repeated by reference.)

4.83 When assessing the sufficiency of the opposed application, it is also important to bear in mind its actual teachings. The opposed application taught the inventors' best prediction at the time regarding proteolytic processing (i.e., signal peptide of 24 amino acids, mature protein of 326 amino acids), which was plain wrong. Dr. Alitalo's two declarations confirm that cells cannot express and secrete VEGF2 taught in the patent application. (See Dr. Alitalo's declarations, OKA1 and OKA2.)

4.84 Knowledge of the proteolytic processing of prior art proteins, discussed extensively by many of the HGS declarants, does not support patentability. If anything, it negates it. The HGS inventors used knowledge of prior art proteins (e.g., VEGF) to predict the signal peptide and mature portions of VEGF2 in their patent application, which is essentially what the HGS declarants say that they would have done. (See AJG1 6.5: "Thus, I would predict that VEGF-2 would be expressed in a similar way." See also AJG1 6.10 - 6.11; ANH1 at 3.15; ATR1 at 11: "I would predict VEGF-2 to be expressed in a similar way [as the PDGF/VEGF family of growth factors'.") HGS was plain wrong in the opposed application, and HGS's declarants likewise would have been wrong in their prediction. The processing taught by the opposed application (simple removal of a signal peptide at position 1-24) does not occur. (See OKA1 and OKA2.)

4.85 Moreover, the full length 419 amino acid protein (VEGF-C) is processed in a manner unexpectedly different and more complex, compared to simple removal of a signal peptide. (See OPR1 at 4.11.1.3 and Documents D70, D71, D73, and D74 cited therein.) Therefore, I must disagree with Dr. Gamble's suggestion that "VEGF-2 is no different in that it contains a signal or leader sequence." (See AJG1 at 6.4; see also AJG1 at 6.3) The processing of the full length VEGF-C protein is substantially different. Even when HGS discovered the 419 amino acid VEGF2 sequence and filed its second patent application, they still badly mis-predicted the manner in which the protein is processed.[15]

4.86 Thus, the only relevant portion of Dr. Gamble's declaration or the other declarations relating to proteolytic processing is her admission that the opposed application was incomplete. She plainly agrees that the VEGF2 signal/leader sequence "is located among the 69 amino acids that **were not disclosed in the patent specification.**" (AJG1 6.4 (emphasis added).)

4.87 In paragraph 7.24, Dr. Gamble declared as follows:

> I was aware that all members of the PDGF/VEGF family (known in March 1994) underwent some proteolytic processing when produced from a cell. Thus, had I been asked to examine VEGF-2 in March 1994 I would have expected that VEGF-2 may also naturally undergo some proteolytic processing when released from a cell. This process occurs naturally during secretion, controlled by cellular enzymes. Consequently, if a

---

[15] In its second generation VEGF2 patent applications, Human Genome Sciences taught that 419 residue VEGF2 has putative leader sequence of approximately 23 residues such that the mature protein comprises 396 amino acids (See Document: D43 and D44 at p. 7, last paragraph). In fact, the leader is 31 amino acids, and the mature protein is much smaller due to additional proteolytic processing. See Document D71.

> researcher were able to produce VEGF-2 and secrete it from a cell I believe a reasonable expectation would be that processing would take place. Therefore, in my opinion, the patent specification fully enables one to express and secrete a biologically active protein that has been correctly processed.

4.88 Dr. Gamble's qualifier "*if* a researcher were able to produce VEGF2 and secrete it from a cell" cannot be overemphasized, because Dr. Alitalo has shown that VEGF2 as taught in the patent application is ***not*** expressed and secreted. Her statements about "reasonable expectation" are really "pure speculation and cannot reasonably be drawn" (see AJG1 7.52.)

H. THE FACT THAT HGS's DECLARANTS WOULD HAVE MADE THE SAME MISTAKES AS THE HGS INVENTORS DOES NOT REHABILITATE THE OPPOSED APPLICATION

4.89 Dr. Aaronson briefly explains that, had he been presented with a novel 350 amino acid VEGF2 sequence in March 1994, he would have (a) predicted that it was proteolytically processed; and (b) predicted that it was biologically active. (See ASA1 at 5 - 6.) Dr. Gamble makes similar predictions. (See AJG1 at 6.5.) In my opinion, what should matter is whether or not the application is correct, and not whether Dr. Aaronson or anyone else would have made favorable or unfavorable "predictions."

4.90 Processing: As I discuss in detail in the preceding section, the HGS scientists also predicted proteolytic processing in a manner analogous to VEGF. (*See* paragraphs 4.71-4.75.) The important point is that they were wrong, and what they taught the public in the opposed application was wrong. First, the VEGF2 was incomplete, and is not processed by cells in the way that Dr. Aaronson or the HGS inventors predicted. Second, even when the full 419 amino acid VEGF2 was discovered by the HGS inventors much later, they still predicted wrong. Dr. Alitalo's science has shown that the proteolytic processing of VEGF-C is much more complicated than the proteolytic processing that occurs with VEGF. See Docment D71.

4.91 Activity: There is still no evidence in the patent application or the ensuing literature of the next seven years that has been made of record in this proceeding that the VEGF2 taught in the *opposed application* is "biologically active." HGS's declarants believe that the requisite testing for activity would have been "routine" (see, e.g., ANH1 at 4.7), but HGS has only reported activity data for molecules that were taught in its *second generation* application or molecules taught by *other research groups* (e.g., Alitalo et al. for VEGF-C) that differ from VEGF2 of the opposed application.

I. THE EVIDENCE OFFERED BY HGS IN SUPPORT OF THE OPPOSED APPLICATION RELATES TO A DIFFERENT INVENTION THAN THE ONE TAUGHT IN THE APPLICATION.

4.92 In this section I explain that the important data and opinions offered by HGS in its evidence in answer does not actually relate to the invention of the opposed application. Rather, it relates to subsequent inventions.

4.93 The teachings in the opposed application concerning full length and mature VEGF2 are unequivocal: "The polynucleotide of the invention . . . contains an open reading from encoding a protein of about 350 amino acid residues of which approximately the first 24 amino acid residues are likely to be leader sequence such that the mature protein comprises 326 amino acids . . . ."

4.94 Notwithstanding these clear teachings, HGS has devoted a vast portion of its declaration evidence arguing about the merits of totally different VEGF2 proteins that were not taught in the application.

4.95 For example, HGS asked Dr. Power to treat the 350 amino acid VEGF2 as "mature VEGF2" and try to express it by attaching a different signal sequence to it: "The Patent Attorneys for Human Genome Sciences (HGS) requested that I perform the following experiments in order to determine whether the 350 amino acid form of VEGF-2 (corresponding to residues 70 to 419 of the 419 amino acid form of VEGF-

2) fused in frame with a heterologous signal sequence would result in the expression and secretion of the protein from eukaryotic cells." (ASP1 at 2.)

4.96 Dr. Aaronson cited Dr. Powers work expressing a 350 amino acid VEGF2 with a different signal sequence with approval. (See ASA1 at 15 - 22.)[16] Dr. Gamble endorsed the same approach for "attempting to express" the VEGF2 sequence which she noted, with hindsight, was missing the real VEGF2 signal sequence. (AJG1 6.4-6.5.)

4.97 Dr. Mattick was even more creative in declaring that he would have been motivated to express a 373 amino acid VEGF2 with a different signal peptide. (See discussion herein at paragraphs 4.19-4.20.) Dr. Hayward came down somewhere in between, because he agreed with Dr. Mattick that he could find 373 amino acids supported in the application, but he then discusses how he might have attempted to express the 350 amino acid VEGF2. (ANH1 3.13-3.26)

4.98 These hypothetical experiments (real experiments in the case of Dr. Power) may be interesting to consider, but they have nothing to do with what the opposed application taught the public, because it taught the public that mature VEGF2 was 326 amino acids.

4.99 One explanation given by the HGS experts for their creative approaches was that the opposed application taught that one could express VEGF2 using a heterologous leader sequence. See ASA1 at 16; AJM1 at 4.9. However, a scientist of oridnary skill who desires to express a secreted protein using a heterologous leader sequence will use the heterologous leader to *replace* the native leader sequence. (For example, replace amino acids 1-24 of VEGF2 with a heterologous leader sequence, attached to

---

[16] Dr. Aaronson declared that Dr. Power succeeded in producing "a biologically active" protein. (See ASA1 17.) I dispute this characterization. Dr. Power did not report any activity assay data in her declaration. She reported only an expression study.

positions 25-350.) There is nothing in the opposed application teaching that one should substitute a heterologous leader to the 350 amino acid VEGF2.

4.100 The inference that could be drawn from all of this is that neither HGS (who designed Dr. Power's experiments) nor its declarants believe in the 326 amino acid mature VEGF2 taught by the opposed application.

4.101 Dr. Hayward declares that he is aware that VEGF2 is proteolytically processed upon secretion from cells in vivo to form the naturally occurring ligand for the Flt4 and KDR/Flk-1 receptors. (ANH1 at 3.22. See also ANH1 at 3.30- 3.35.) He is mistaken. As I explain in my original declaration (OPR1 at 2.7.18) and again above (*e.g.*, Paragraph 2.15), fully processed VEGF-C, invented and patented by Alitalo et al. (*see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 6,221,839 and 6,245,530, **Exhibit PAWR-13 and Exhibit PAWR-14**, respectively), is a ligand for Flt4 and KDR/Flk-1. The 350 amino acid VEGF2 as taught in the original application was not taught to be a ligand for any receptor, cannot be expressed and secreted by cells, and has never been reported in the literature to be a ligand for these receptors.

4.102 Dr. Hayward also declares that VEGF-2 "of course" functions as a growth factor. This, too, has never been established. The VEGF-C forms invented by Professor Alitalo's group have been reported to have certain growth factor activities, and the HGS II application alleges that some unidentified form of VEGF2 may have exhibited some growth factor activity in some experiments. However, the VEGF-C polypeptides of Alitalo and the 419 amino acid VEGF2 from the HGS II application are not the teachings of the opposed application.

4.103 Dr. Hayward also declares, "page 4 lines 12 to 14 of the patent specification states that the VEGF-2 polypeptides of the invention may be used to isolate receptors of VEGF-2. At page 24 fifth paragraph to page 25 first paragraph the patent specification discloses that VEGF-2 binds to tyrosine kinase receptors on the surface of target cells to activate endothelial cell growth." (ANH1 at 3.30.) This statement falsely attributes the teachings of Alitalo et al. to the inventors of the opposed

application. The opposed application contains no teaching whatsoever of the identity of VEGF2 receptors, but only speculation that there are such receptors. More than a year later, when HGS filed its second series of applications on the 419 amino acid VEGF2, HGS still had failed to report the identity of any VEGF2 receptor. (See Documents D44-D46.)

J. MISCELLANEOUS SPECIFIC COMMENTS TO EVIDENCE-IN-ANSWER.

4.104 In this section I try to address any remaining parts of the HGS declarations that appear to relate to issues of fair basis and sufficiency.

J1. AJM1 4.61-4.68

4.105 In paragraphs 4.61-4.68 Dr. Mattick spends about two pages attempting to rebut my explanation that the opposed application fails to teach or exemplify any *active* fragments, analogs, or derivatives of VEGF-2, or any such fragments, analogs, or deriviatives with *inhibitory* activity.

4.106 Dr. Mattick first cites to Example 2 as allegedly describing "a fragment." (AJM1 4.63) Even if one fragment is described there, the application provides no evidence or indication that it is "active" or is an "inhibitor". Moreover, as I explain in my first declaration, the description of this example is defective. (See OPR1 at 2.7.20 and 6.6.)

4.107 He also cites an excerpt from page 5 of the opposed application. (AJM1 4.63.) As I explain in my first declaration, this excerpt is nothing more than the inventors attempting to characterize features of the complete VEGF2 molecule - there is no teaching there of fragments. (OPR1 at 3.4.2.) Moreover, even if these were fragments, there is again no teaching or evidence of activity or inhibitory properties.

4.108 Dr. Mattick then launches into a discussion of the experimentation that he could have done to make fragments and then test them for activity or inhibitory properties. This discussion of what Dr. Mattick might have been able to do "to identify" such

molecules only proves my original point that the application itself fails to teach them. His explanation of a research plan for arriving at active fragments, analogs, or derivatives, or inhibitory ones, would be unnecessary if the application had described any active fragments to which he could refer.

J2. AJM1 4.81-4.83

4.109 In paragraphs 4.10-4.10.6 of my first declaration I explained that claims in the opposed application defining polypeptides by the ability of antibodies to bind VEGF2 lack any basis in the application. For example, I explained that the application gives no indication that the applicants even intended to define an invention in this manner. (OPR1 4.10.1) Dr. Mattick says he disagrees, but for support, he says that certain pages of the application "provide a variety of suggested uses for which the defined fragments may be used." (AJM1 4.81) Dr. Mattick also urges that he could have made antibodies to the VEGF2 taught in the opposed application. (AJM1 4.82-4.83) He misses the point. Irrespective of whether there would be a use for the polypeptides, the application itself is not directed to such polypeptides. Rather, they appear to be afterthoughts, added to the application in an attempt to cover subject matter invented after the opposed application was filed, such as "full length" VEGF2 on which HGS filed a second application much later, and biologically active VEGF-C polypeptides that were invented by other scientists. (See OPR1 at 4.10-4.10.6.)

J3. AJG1 6.1-6.2

4.110 Dr. Gamble credits HGS with succeeding in identifying a VEGF2 gene and polypeptide sequence. (AJG1 6.1) This is inaccurate, in that the proposed application taught an incomplete sequence that cannot be expressed and secreted. When HGS felt that they had identified the complete VEGF2 gene, they filed a second series of VEGF2 patent applications. *See* discussion in OPR1 at 1.5.1-1.5.1.2 and Documents D44-D46.

4.111 Dr. Gamble says that she was aware that the cysteine residues enable the PDGF/VEGF family of proteins to form dimers. (AJG1 6.2) The published evidence

that I have seen suggests that fully processed VEGF-C is different from other members of the family in that cysteines are not involved in forming cysteine-linked dimers. (See Document D71 at p. 3907.)

J4. AJG1 7.15

4.112 Dr. Gamble alleges that "The patent specification clearly identifies that VEGF-2 has angiogenic activities, and describes in vitro angiogenic assays of VEGF-2, which could be routinely used." I disagree. There is no description of in vitro angiogenic assays in the patent application. And, to the extent the patent specification "clearly identifies" angiogenic activities, it is only by assertion, unsupported by evidence. In this manner, the patent application also "clearly identifies" many other "activities" such as "to induce the growth of damaged bone, periodontium, or ligament tissues" or to promote the formation of cementum with collagen fiber ingrowths. (See opposed application at p. 17.)

J5. ANH1 3.4

4.113 Dr. Hayward declared that "the term VEGF-2 conveys to me the idea of not just the sequences presented in the patent specification, but a family of related sequences. Once a protein has been identified any given sequence can be tested to determine whether any amino acid changes affect the structural and or functional characteristics of that protein." Assuming Dr. Hayward's statements are true in a general sense, they do not apply to VEGF2 taught in the opposed patent application. One cannot test to determine whether amino acid changes affect the structural or functional characteristics of VEGF2 taught in the patent application, because the application does not demonstrate a VEGF2 function, and because VEGF2 taught in the patent application is not expressed and secreted as the application taught it could be.

J6. ANH1 3.37-3.37.5

4.114 Dr. Hayward Declared as follows:

> 3.37 Associate Professor Rogers has commented that fragments of polypeptides have no practical utility whatsoever (see for example paragraph 4.10.2,

> Associate Professor Rogers' Statutory Declaration). Clearly this is not the case. As asserted in the patent specification, fragments of polypeptides can be used to make antibodies, which are useful both experimentally and therapeutically. In addition, active fragments of polypeptides are often used in therapy as antagonists since they can compete with the full length version but may lack full biological activity. Further, such polypeptide fragments could also be used as agonists that might mimic some of the biological activities of the full-length protein. Although the skilled person would be aware of this in any case, I note that the specification discloses the following:

(Dr. Hayward then continues with a discussion of the alleged teachings in the opposed application.)

4.115 Dr. Hayward has misstated what I said in OPR 4.10.2. Paragraph 4.10.2 made no sweeping statements whatsoever applicable to the utility of fragments of all polypeptides. In fact, it made no statement whatsoever about fragments of VEGF2 per se. In that paragraph, I explained that claims 16-27, 40-50, and 57-61 contained no limitations relating to biological activity, and that the specification of the opposed application failed to provide an activity commensurate with the genus being claimed. As I had explained in 4.10.2 and elsewhere in OPR1, the literal scope of those claims encompasses more than just fragments of VEGF2 that might have utility.

4.116 In addition to misunderstanding 4.10.2, Dr. Hayward expresses ideas that require comment.

4.117 For example, he says that fragments of VEGF2 can be used to make antibodies which are useful therapeutically. Since the application fails to demonstrate any biological effect of VEGF2, it is purely speculative to say that antibodies to VEGF2 could be

therapeutic. If someone develops such a therapy, it would owe nothing to the teachings in the opposed application.

4.118 Dr. Hayward also declares that VEGF2 antibodies can be used to measure elevated levels of VEGF2 in individuals, and speculates that such levels may be associated with cancer. Again, there is no evidence supporting this speculation in the patent application. If someone discovers such an association and develops a working diagnostic, that development would be due to independent research, and not to the teachings of the patent application. The VEGF2 taught in the patent application cannot be expressed or secreted by cells, as demonstrated by Dr. Alitalo. Thus, the notion of elevated levels of the VEGF2 *taught in the opposed application* has thus been refuted.

4.119 Dr. Hayward says fragments are often used in therapy as antagonists since they can compete with the full length version but may lack full biological activity. Again, this is merely speculative, since the patent application fails to demonstrate that the full length VEGF2 has any biological function. In fact, the Alitalo declarations persuasively demonstrate that cells cannot even express and secrete full length VEGF2, as taught in the opposed application, so the notion that there is "the full length version" that needs antagonizing lacks credibility.

4.120 Dr. Hayward says some fragments may be used as agonists because they "might mimic some of the biological activities of the full-length protein." As I have stated previously, the whole notion of biological activity or activities of full length VEGF2, taught in the application, is speculative. The notion that fragments could have been made and tested for activities that have not even been demonstrated for full length VEGF2 is even more speculative. If such fragments were found, it would be through the efforts of further research, and not be attributable to the teachings in the application.

4.121 Dr. Hayward also declares that the application "clearly demonstrates" that VEGF-2 is expressed at higher levels in cells derived from malignant tumors. I addressed the

apparent errors in the relevant HGS experiment in paragraphs 4.50-4.52, which I repeat by reference.

J7. ANH1 4.10

4.122 Dr. Hayward declared that the process of determining which parts of a polypeptide molecule are required for activity was routine by 1994. If this were true, it pre-supposes at least that the activity of the polypeptide was known to begin with. The experimentation that Dr. Hayward is describing could only have been performed after the extensive experimentation that would have been required to successfully express and secrete VEGF2, and the additional experimentation that would have been required to identify its activity (if any), *and* the additional experimentation to make the mutant forms of VEGF2. This experimentation is extensive and unpredictable, and should not be credited to the opposed application, which taught only an incomplete DNA/protein sequence with no proven activity.

4.123 Dr. Hayward declares that the specification highlights eight cysteines and a 14 amino acid signature motif thought to be involved in VEGF-2 function. The specification identifies these areas as a feature shared with the prior art, but provides little guidance otherwise.

J8. ANH1 4.15

4.124 In paragraph 5.7.1 of my first declaration I explained that the opposed application does not indicate an intent to claim a genus of polypeptides that bind an antibody that binds VEGF-2. Dr. Hayward says he finds such an intention at page 23, lines 5-14. (ANH1 at 4.15.) I have reviewed the application again but disagree with Dr. Hayward. Pages 22-24 relate to alleged methods of making and using antibodies, as Dr. Hayward later alleges himself at ANH1 4.16. Page 23 does not indicate to the reader an intention to define a genus of VEGF2 polypeptides.

LACK OF CLARITY

5.1 In my first declaration I explained that claims 51 and 54 and claims dependent therefrom are confusing in that claim 51 seems to require administration of a polypeptide, but dependent claim 54 seems to say that administration of the polypeptide encompasses the act of administering DNA, an activity that does not involve administration of any polypeptide whatsoever. (OPR1 6.8.2) Dr. Mattick confirms my analysis that these claims suffer from this ambiguity by reading them to permit the limitation "administration . . . of the polypeptide" without administering any polypeptide. (AJM1 at 4.109 - 4.112.)

5.2 Indefiniteness of "fragment, analogue, or derivative" claims.

5.2.1 The declarations provided by HGS provide interpretations of "fragment, analog, or derivative" language that are intended to save the claims from encompassing the prior art. However, those claim interpretations, if adopted, raise substantial issues of vagueness which I explain above in paragraphs 3.18-3.25.4, and repeat hear by reference. Even if the standard that they proposed were understandable, it would result in the scope of the claims changing with time, as new genes are discovered.

5.2.2 Dr. Gamble offered the following interpretation of "fragment, analogue, or derivative" in her declaration:

> Reference is made on page 9, line 14 to page 10, line 5 of the specification to the meaning of the terms "fragment", "derivative" and "analog". When I read these passages I understood HGS to be saying that a fragment, derivative or analogue is a polypeptide that retains essentially the same biological function or activity as VEGF-2. (See AJG1 7.7 and 7.8.)

5.2.3 I agree with Dr. Gamble that there is some support at page 9 of the opposed application for this interpretation. However, I also observe that claim 56 is directed to a fragment, analogue, or derivative having an inhibitory activity. Dr. Mattick reads other portions of the application as suggesting that VEGF2

fragments can have VEGF2 inhibitory activity. (See AJM1 4.23.) These claim interpretations are irreconcilable.

5.2.4 Dr. Gamble also offers the following additional guidance about the definition of fragment, analogue, or derivative:

> While I acknowledge this basic requirement I am conscious of the fact that before something can be an analogue, fragment or a derivative of a protein it needs to share sufficient identity with that protein to make it resemble that protein or at least part thereof. In my opinion both of these requirements must be satisfied before a sequence of amino acids can truly be called an analogue, fragment or a derivative of VEGF-2. (AJG1 at 7.7)

5.2.5 As I explain in my original declaration and also above, neither the application nor conventional scientific usage clarifies in any meaningful way what "sufficient identity . . . to make it resemble" means. (See OPR1 at 4.6.3; see above at 3.23-3.24.) Even if the concept were understandable, the boundaries are not.

5.3 Indefiniteness of "VEGF2 activity."

As I explained in my first declaration, the opposed application contains no explicit definition of VEGF2 activity (OPR1 at 2.3.1 - 2.3.2.3), but suggests many in vivo or in vitro uses for VEGF2 (all unsupported by evidence). (OPR1 at 2.3.3.) I explained in OPR1 that "VEGF2 activity" and related terms were indefinite. (See OPR1 at 6.5-6.5.1, 2.3-2.3.5, and 4.6-4.8.) HGS's declarations cast still further uncertainty on the meaning of VEGF2 activity, because they are ambiguous about whether "VEGF2 activity" means a single parameter or multiple parameters. If a polypeptide must have "all" of these biological activities, it would be impossible to ever complete the tests to determine them. If "one or more" of these activities is sufficient for "VEGF2

activity", then prior art polypeptides have VEGF2 activity. (See OPR1 at 2.3.) If it is not necessary for the polypeptide to retain all of the supposed VEGF2 in vivo and in vitro properties, it is unclear how many such properties can be "lost" before the polypeptide is no longer considered to have VEGF2 activity.

5.3.1 Dr. Gamble declares that she immediately understands biological function or activity "to include at least in vivo and/or in vitro activity." (AJG1 at 7.8) The implication of this statement is that she thinks every use mentioned in the patent application, from culturing vascular endothelial cells, providing cancer therapy, promoting bone or periodontium or ligament growth, etc. is VEGF2 activity. It is still ambiguous whether each alone is VEGF2 activity or whether, together, they comprise VEGF2 activity.

5.3.2 Other parts of Dr. Gamble's declaration suggest that a single biological function is sufficient for "VEGF2 activity." For example, in paragraphs 7.9 and 7.10, and again in paragraphs 7.15-7.18, she seems to be suggesting that testing for angiogenic activity alone is a sufficient test for VEGF2 activity.

5.3.3 Still other parts of Dr. Gamble's declaration suggest that a single biological function is NOT sufficient for "VEGF2 activity". For example, in AJG1 7.11, Dr. Gamble says that whether or not a polypeptide promotes *endothelial cell growth* is a means for distinguishing a polypeptide that has VEGF2 activity from a PDGFa or PDGFb polypeptide, which she says do not promote growth of endothelial cells. Here, she seems to be saying that all VEGF2 polypeptides have at least endothelial cell growth activity (because that is how they can be distinguished from PDGF polypeptides). This endothelial growth activity must be in addition to the "angiogenic" activity she says she could have easily screened for (in AJG1 7.9-7.10 and 7.15-7.18), because Dr. Gamble teaches that PDGF polypeptides also have angiogenic activity. (See Litwin, Gamble, and Vadas, Annexure GBC-10 of the HGS evidence, at page 105 (PDGF "has roles in wound healing and angiogenesis").)

5.3.4 Dr. Hayward says that VEGF2 activity means "one or more" of a list of about seven activities that he selected from the patent application. (See ANH1 3.6) His list explicitly *omitted* many other functions also taught in the patent application, such as growth of damaged bone, periodontium, or ligament tissue as stated at page 17 of the opposed application. It is not clear whether Dr. Hayward now classifies one or more of these other functions as VEGF2 activities. (At paragraph 4.4, Dr. Hayward makes generic reference to all of the activities recited at pages 4 and 16-18 of the application.) Dr. Hayward also is of the opinion that whether the specification teaches a unique defining activity for VEGF2 is irrelevant. (ANH1 at 4.3.)

5.3.5 Thus, even when HGS's declarants are trying to explain the alleged simplicity of understanding and screening for VEGF2 activity, they create more questions than answers. If VEGF2 means "angiogenic activity" then why did the application teach that VEGF2 did so many other things, and how does "VEGF2 activity" distinguish the angiogenic PDGF and VEGF polypeptides of the prior art? If "VEGF2 activity" means the combination of "endothelial growth activity" AND "angiogenesis activity" (per Dr. Gamble, to exclude PDGF from the claims), then why does Dr. Gamble suggest in other paragraphs of her declaration that the only testing she would have needed to do was testing for "angiogenic activity"? And how does this definition of "VEGF2 activity" exclude prior art VEGF polypeptides, which promote endothelial cell growth and angiogenesis? If the combination of "angiogenic activity" and "endothelial growth activity" are the two functions that HGS says are the critical ones for defining "VEGF2 activity", then why does the application identify so many other functions, and why do the experts broadly say that "VEGF2 activity is "in vitro and/or in vivo" activity? And why (except perhaps for hindsight) did the HGS declarants select angiogenic activity and/or endothelial cell growth activity as the two important activities, to the exclusion of all of the other functions mentioned in the application? If a protein induces the growth of damaged bone, periodontium, or ligament tissue as stated at page 17 of the opposed application, does that protein have VEGF2

activity? Does the answer depend on whether it also promotes angiogenesis and endothelial cell growth? For all of these reasons, I find that the declarations of Dr. Gamble and others only confuse further the meaning of "VEGF2 activity."

5.3.6 HGS's continued assertion that VEGF2 activity includes antigenic activity (the ability to cause antibody production) raises still more questions. (See paragraphs 3.32-3.35, repeated here by reference.)

5.4 Indefiniteness of "polypeptide binds an antibody which binds to VEGF-2"

5.4.1 At least claims 16-22 and 40-50 of the opposed application recite, or depend from claims that recite, the limitation "polypeptide binds an antibody which binds to VEGF-2" or some close variation thereof.

5.4.2. HGS's declarants ask the Patent Office to believe that antibody cross-reactivity is simply too unpredictable to draw any conclusions from looking at protein sequences. Exemplary excerpts from the HGS evidence follows:

> Associate Professor Rogers appears to suggest (see, for example paragraph 2.7.16) that antibodies that bind to regions of VEGF-2 that are conserved with other PDGF/VEGF family members might be cross-reactive. Associate Professor Rogers refers to a number of prior art disclosures of anti-VEGF or anti-PDGF antibodies. Simply because two sequences share some homology does not necessarily imply that any antibody produced against one molecule would necessarily be cross-reactive against the other. In my opinion no conclusion can be made as to whether sequences sharing some homology will generate antibodies that are cross reactive. (AJG1 7.21)

> The fact that there is some sequence homology between VEGF-2 and VEGF and other proteins does not mean that there is a high probability that antibodies to VEGF-2 will cross react with VEGF or those other proteins. Antibodies generally have exquisite specificity and will only cross react with closely related proteins. I do not believe that any conclusion can be drawn about cross-reactive antibodies at a theoretical or practical level. (AJM1 at 4.33)

5.4.3 If the Patent Office accepts the premise of HGS's experts, then I believe it should also find that all of the relevant claims which attempt to define subject matter with an antibody binding limitation are indefinite. If no predictions can be made, then HGS is saying that the public is required to physically screen a polypeptide with every antibody that anyone could ever generate against VEGF-2, in order to determine whether the polypeptide falls within a claim. That is clearly an impossible task. The boundaries of the claims are still further obscured because the cutoff level of binding is unspecified.

5.4.4 When criticizing the Alitalo declaration, HGS's declarants ask the Patent Office to believe that the results of an antibody binding experiment can be manipulated to achieve any desired result, by varying such parameters as antibody chosen (because antibodies have different binding affinities); selection of polyclonal versus monoclonal antibodies; the amount of antibodies used; and the lack of established controls. (See, e.g., ANH1 at 5.7.) If the Patent Office accepts HGS's position on this issue, then logically, it must also conclude that all of the claims that define a genus of polypeptides by whether they bind an antibody that binds VEGF2 are unclear. The essence of what HGS is saying is that whether an antibody binds to a VEGF2 polypeptide can be manipulated to achieve a desired result, unless a number of parameters are carefully defined. None of those parameters are defined in the opposed application or the claims at issue. In fact, the entire notion of VEGF2

antibody binding is theoretical in the opposed application, since no antibodies are taught. If antibody binding is subject to all of the variables and manipulations identified by HGS, then the metes and bounds of the claims are also unpredictably variable and subject to manipulation, and cannot be considered clear.

5.5 Indefiniteness of "hybridisation" language in the claims.

5.5.1 I explained that hybridization language in the claims was confusing in my original declaration. (See, e.g., OPR1 at 6.7 - 6.7.2.)

5.5.2 Dr. Hayward discusses hybridization claim language at ANH1 3.9-3.12. He says that, "When I read the word "hybridise' in those claims I understand it to mean that the hybridisation reaction should be conducted under suitably stringent conditions such that only VEGF-2 polynucleotide sequences would bind either nucleotide sequence shown in the sequence listing (SEQ ID No. 1) or the cDNA deposited in the ATCC deposit identified in the patent specification or fragments thereof." Needless to say, Dr. Hayward's definition is totally circular. He says he would define the VEGF2 subject matter of the claims as encompassing VEGF2 subject matter.

5.5.3 To the extent that Dr. Hayward believes that "VEGF2" can include variants of the precise VEGF2 sequence taught in the application, such as non-human "orthologs" (suggested in ANH1 at 3.3), the application gives no guidance as to how dissimilar such sequences are or what hybridization conditions would be appropriate for distinguishing them, so the metes and bounds of the claims cannot be ascertained.

AND I MAKE this solemn declaration by virtue of the Statutory Declarations Act 1959, and subject to the penalties provided by that Act for the making of false statements in statutory

declarations, conscientiously believing the statements contained in this declaration to be true in every particular.

DECLARED at Melbourne, Victoria.....

This 12th day of November, 2001

P. Rogers

Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

Before me:

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-1

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

(12) PATENT
(19) AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE

(11) Application No. AU 199660467 B2
(10) Patent No. 714484

(54) Title
Human vascular endothelial growth factor 2

(51)[6] International Patent Classification(s)
C12N 015/12
C07K 014/475
C07K 014/49
C07K 014/50
C07K 014/65
C12N 015/18
C12N 015/19

(21) Application No: 199660467

(22) Application Date: 1996.06.06

(87) WIPO No: WO96/39515

(30) Priority Data

(31) Number	(32) Date	(33) Country
08/465968	1995.06.06	US

(43) Publication Date : 1996.12.24
(43) Publication Journal Date : 1997.02.13
(44) Accepted Journal Date : 2000.01.06

(71) Applicant(s)
Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

(72) Inventor(s)
Craig A Rosen; Jing-Shan Hu; Liang Cao

(74) Agent/Attorney
DAVIES COLLISON CAVE,1 Little Collins Street,MELBOURNE VIC 3000

Pages 1/1-111/111, drawings, replaced by new pages 1/112-112/112; after rectification of obvious errors as authorized by the International Searching Authority

PCT

60467/96

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : C12N 15/12, 15/18, 15/19, C07K 14/475, 14/49, 14/50, 14/65 — A1

(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/39515

(43) International Publication Date: 12 December 1996 (12.12.96)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US96/09001

(22) International Filing Date: 6 June 1996 (06.06.96)

(30) Priority Data:
08/465,968 6 June 1995 (06.06.95) US

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except US)*: HUMAN GENOME SCIENCES, INC. [US/US]; 9410 Key West Avenue, Rockville, MD 20850 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants *(for US only)*: ROSEN, Craig, A. [US/US]; 22400 Rolling Hill Road, Laytonsville, MD 20882 (US).. HU, Jing-Shan [GB/US]; 16125 Howard Landing Drive, Gaithersburg, MD 20878 (US). CAO, Liang [GB/GB]; 18B Suncrest Tower, Monmouth Terrace, Hong Kong (HK).

(74) Agents: MULLINS, J., G.; Carella, Byrne, Bain, Gilfillan, Cecchi, Stewart & Olstein, 6 Becker Farm Road, Roseland, NJ 07068 (US) et al.

(81) Designated States: AL, AU, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CZ, EE, FI, GE, IL, JP, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LT, LV, MD, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, UA, US, UZ, VN, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).

Published
With international search report.

(54) Title: HUMAN VASCULAR ENDOTHELIAL GROWTH FACTOR 2

(57) Abstract

Disclosed is a human VEGF2 polypeptide and DNA (RNA) encoding such VEGF2 polypeptides. Also provided is a procedure for producing such polypeptide by recombinant techniques and antibodies and antagonist against such polypeptide. Also disclosed is a method of using such polypeptide for stimulating wound healing and for vascular tissue repair. Also provided are methods of using the antagonists to inhibit tumor growth, inflammation and to treat diabetic retinopathy, rheumatoid arthritis and psoriasis. Diagnostic methods for detecting mutations in the VEGF2 coding sequence and alterations in the concentration of VEGF2 protein in a sample derived from a host are also disclosed.

THE CLAIMS DEFINING THE INVENTION ARE AS FOLLOWS:

1. An isolated polynucleotide comprising a member selected from the group consisting of:

a) a polynucleotide encoding the full length polypeptide as set forth in SEQ ID NO: 2;

b) a polynucleotide encoding the mature protein portion of SEQ ID NO:2;

c) a polynucleotide encoding the proprotein portion of SEQ ID NO: 2;

d) a polynucleotide encoding the human VEGF-2 polypeptide encoded by the cDNA in ATCC Deposit No. 97149;

e) a polynucleotide comprising the nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising amino acid residues -46 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

f) a polynucleotide comprising the nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising amino acid residues -23 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

g) a polynucleotide comprising the nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising amino acids 1 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

h) a polynucleotide comprising the nucleotide sequence encoding a portion of the mature VEGF-2 polypeptide comprising amino acids 24 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

i) a polynucleotide comprising the nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising amino acids -46 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

j) a polynucleotide comprising the nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising amino acids -23 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

k) a polynucleotide comprising the nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising amino acids 1 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

l) a polynucleotide fragment of the polynucleotide according to any one of a) to d) with the proviso that said polynucleotide fragment comprises at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotide of i), j) or k);

m) a polynucleotide fragment which hybridises to at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotide encoding amino acids -46 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2 under the following conditions: hybridisation in 0.5 M sodium peroxide

$NaPO_4$, 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) at 65°C and washing with 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 60°C or equivalent hybridisation stringency;

n) a polynucleotide comprising the complementary form of the polynucleotide according to any one of a) to m).

2. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes the full length polypeptide as set forth in SEQ ID NO: 2.

3. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes the mature protein portion of SEQ ID NO:2.

4. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes the proprotein portion of SEQ ID NO: 2.

5. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes the human VEGF-2 polypeptide encoded by the cDNA in ATCC Deposit No. 97149.

6. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes a polypeptide comprising amino acids -46 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

7. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes a polypeptide comprising amino acids -23 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

8. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes a polypeptide comprising amino acids 1 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

9. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes a portion of the mature VEGF-2 polypeptide comprising amino acids 24 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

10. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes

a polypeptide comprising amino acids -46 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

11. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes a polypeptide comprising amino acids -23 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

12. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide encodes a polypeptide comprising amino acids 1 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

13. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide comprises a fragment of the polynucleotide according to any one of a) to d) with the proviso that said polynucleotide fragment comprises at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotides of i), j) or k).

14. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide comprises a fragment which hybridises to at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotide encoding amino acids -46 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2 under the following conditions: hybridisation in 0.5 M sodium peroxide $NaPO_4$, 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) at 65°C and washing with 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 60°C or equivalent hybridisation stringency.

15. An isolated polynucleotide according to claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide comprises the complementary form of the polynucleotide according to any one of claims 2 to claim 14.

16. An isolated polypeptide comprising at least 30 amino acid residues and having VEGF2 biological activity further comprising a member selected from the group consisting of:

a) a polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence of the full length polypeptide of SEQ ID NO:2;

b) a polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence of the mature protein of SEQ ID NO: 2;

c) a polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence of the proprotein portion of

SEQ ID NO: 2;

d) a polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence of the mature polypeptide encoded by the cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97149;

e) a polypeptide comprising amino acids -46 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

f) a polypeptide comprising amino acids -23 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

g) a polypeptide comprising amino acids 1 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

h) a portion of the mature VEGF-2 polypeptide comprising amino acids 24 to 373 of SEQ ID NO:2;

i) a polypeptide comprising amino acids -46 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

j) a polypeptide comprising amino acids -23 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

k) a polypeptide comprising amino acids 1 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2;

l) a polypeptide comprising an active fragment of the VEGF2 polypeptides according to any one of a) to d) with the proviso that part of said polypeptide fragment is encoded by at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotide encoding the polypeptide of any one of i), j) or k);

m) a polypeptide fragment comprising an amino acid sequence encoded by a polynucleotide sequence which hybridises to at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotide encoding any one of the polypeptides of i), j) or k) under the following conditions: hybridisation in 0.5 M sodium peroxide $NaPO_4$, 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) at 65°C and washing with 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 60°C or equivalent hybridisation stringency.

17. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 15 comprising the amino acid sequence of the full length polypeptide of SEQ ID NO:2.

18. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising the amino acid sequence of the mature portion of SEQ ID NO: 2.

19. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising a polypeptide comprising the amino acid sequence of the proprotein portion of SEQ ID NO: 2.

20. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising the amino acid sequence of the mature VEGF-2 polypeptide encoded by the cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97149.

21. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising amino acids -46 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

22. An isolated polypeptide according Claim 16 comprising amino acids -23 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

23. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising amino acids 1 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

24. An isolated portion of the mature VEGF-2 polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising amino acids 24 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

25. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising amino acids -46 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

26. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising amino acids -23 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

27. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising amino acids 1 to 24 of SEQ ID NO: 2.

28. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising a fragment of any one of the polypeptides of Claims 16 to 20 with the proviso that part of said polypeptide fragment is encoded by at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotide encoding the polypeptide of any one of Claims 25 to 27.

29. An isolated polypeptide according to Claim 16 comprising an amino acid sequence

encoded by a polynucleotide sequence which hybridises to at least 30 contiguous nucleotides of the polynucleotide encoding any one of the polypeptides of Claims 25 to 27 under the following conditions: hybridisation in 0.5 M sodium peroxide $NaPO_4$, 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) at 65°C and washing with 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 60°C or equivalent hybridisation stringency.

30. An isolated polypeptide according to any one of Claims 16 to 29 further comprising a heterologous polypeptide.

31. An isolated polypeptide according to any one of Claims 16 to 30 further comprising a homodimer.

32. An isolated polypeptide according to any one of Claims 16 to 31 wherein the polypeptide is glycosylated.

33. A composition comprising the polypeptide according to any one of Claims 16 to 32 or 40 and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and /or diluents.

34. A vector comprising the polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1 to 15.

35. A recombinant vector comprising the polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1-15 operatively associated with a regulatory sequence that controls gene expression.

36. A host cell comprising the polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1-15 operably associated with a heterologous regulatory sequence or a vector comprising same.

37. The polynucleotide sequence according to any one of Claims 1-15 further comprising a heterologous polynucleotide.

38. The polynucleotide sequence of Claim 37 further comprising a polynucleotide which

encodes a heterologous polypeptide.

39. A method for producing a VEGF-2 polypeptide at least comprising the step of culturing the genetically engineered host cell of Claim 36 for a time and under conditions suitable for the expression of the polypeptide encoded by said polynucleotide to occur.

40. A polypeptide produced by the method of Claim 39.

41. A composition comprising the polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1-15, 37, or 38 and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and/or diluents.

42. Use of the polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1 to 15, 37 or 38 or the polypeptide according to any one of Claims 16 to 32 or 40 in the preparation of a medicament for the treatment of a patient having need of human VEGF-2 polypeptide.

43. An antibody which is capable of binding to the polypeptide according to any one of Claims 16 to 29 with the proviso that the antibody is not capable of binding to a polypeptide consisting of amino acid residues 24 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2 or a fragment thereof.

44. An antisense construct capable of binding to the polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1-15 or a complementary form thereof with the proviso that the antisense construct is not capable of binding to a polynucleotide sequence encoding amino acids 24 to 373 of SEQ ID NO: 2 or a fragment thereof.

45. A method of stimulating proliferation of endothelial cells in a patient comprising administering to the patient the polypeptide according to any one of Claims 16 to 32 or 40 for a time and under conditions sufficient for the proliferation of endothelial cells to occur.

46. The method of Claim 45 wherein the patient has vasculature tissue damage.

47. The method of Claim 45 wherein the patient has a wound, tissue damage or bone damage.

48. The method of Claim 45 wherein the patient has ischemia.

49. The method of Claim 45 wherein the patient has myocardial infarction.

50. The method of Claim 45 wherein the patient has coronary artery disease, peripheral vascular disease or CNS vascular disease.

51. The method according to any one of Claims 46 to 50 wherein the stimulation of endothelial cell proliferation is capable of further stimulating angiogenesis.

52. The isolated polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1 to 15, 37, 38 or 44 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and /or Examples.

53. The isolated polypeptide according to anyone of Claims 16 to 32 or 40 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

54. The vector of Claim 34 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

55. The host cell of Claim 36 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

56. The method according to any one of Claims 39, 45 to 51 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

57. The use according to Claim 42 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference

to the Figures and/or Examples.

58. The composition of Claim 33 or 41 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

DATED this EIGHTH day of NOVEMBER, 1999

Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

DAVIES COLLISON CAVE

Patent Attorneys for the Applicant

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-2

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

(12) PATENT
(19) AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE

(11) Application No. AU 199653665 B2
(10) Patent No. 726486

(54) Title
Human tumor necrosis factor delta and epsilon

(51)[7] International Patent Classification(s)
C07H 021/02 C12N 005/00
C07H 021/04 C12N 015/09
C07K 001/00 C12N 015/63
C07K 014/00

(21) Application No: 199653665 (22) Application Date: 1996.03.14

(87) WIPO No: WO97/33902

(43) Publication Date : 1997.10.01
(43) Publication Journal Date : 1997.11.27
(44) Accepted Journal Date : 2000.11.09

(71) Applicant(s)
Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

(72) Inventor(s)
Jian Ni; Guo-Liang Yu; Reiner L. Gentz; Patrick J. Dillon

(74) Agent/Attorney
WRAY and ASSOCIATES,PO Box 6292,Hay Street,EAST PERTH WA 6892

(56) Related Art
US 5487984
M.D. ADAMS ET AL. NATURE VOL.355 13/2/1992 PP 632-634

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-13

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

OPI DATE 01/10/97 APPLN. ID 53665/96
AOJP DATE 27/11/97 PCT NUMBER PCT/US96/03774
AU9653665
IN

(51) International Patent Classification 7 : C07H 21/02, 21/04, C07K 1/00, 14/00, C12N 5/00, 15/09, 15/63

A1

(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/33902

(43) International Publication Date: 18 September 1997 (18.09.97)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US96/03774

(22) International Filing Date: 14 March 1996 (14.03.96)

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except US)*: HUMAN GENOME SCIENCES, INC. [US/US]; 9410 Key West Avenue, Rockville, MD 20850-3338 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants *(for US only)*: NI, Jian [CN/US]; 5502 Manorfield Road, Rockville, MD 20853 (US). YU, Guo-Liang [CN/US]; 13524 Straw Bale Lane, Darnestown, MD 20878 (US). GENTZ, Reiner, L. [DE/US]; 13404 Fairland Park Drive, Silver Spring, MD 20904 (US). , Patrick J. Dillon

(74) Agents: HERRON, Charles, J.; Carella, Byrne, Bain, Gilfillan, Cecchi, Stewart & Olstein, 6 Becker Farm Road, Roseland, NJ 07068 (US) et al.

(81) Designated States: AM, AU, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CZ, EE, FI, GE, HU, JP, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LT, LV, MD, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, UA, US, UZ, VN, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).

Published

With international search report.

(54) Title: HUMAN TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR DELTA AND EPSILON

(57) Abstract

The invention relates to human TNF delta and TNF epsilon polypeptides, polynucleotides encoding the polypeptides, methods for producing the polypeptides, in particular by expressing the polynucleotides, and agonists and antagonists of the polypeptides. The invention further relates to methods for utilizing such polynucleotides, polypeptides, agonists and antagonists for applications, which relate, in part, to research, diagnostic and clinical arts.

THE JOURNAL OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY

Vol. 269, No. 17, Issue of April 29, pp. 12456–12461, 1994
Printed in U.S.A.

Heparin Modulates the Interaction of $VEGF_{165}$ with Soluble and Cell Associated *flk-1* Receptors*

(Received for publication, July 8, 1993, and in revised form, February 3, 1994)

Shoshana Tessler‡, Patricia Rockwell§, Dan Hicklin§, Tzafra Cohen‡¶, Ben-Zion Levi¶, Larry Witte§, Ihor R. Lemischka‖, and Gera Neufeld‡**

From the ‡Department of Biology and the ¶Department of Food Engineering and Biotechnology, Technion, Israel Institute of Technology, Haifa, 32000, Israel, the ‖Department of Molecular Biology, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey 08544, and §ImClone Systems Inc., New York, New York 10014

The 165-amino acid form of vascular endothelial growth factor ($VEGF_{165}$) is a mitogen for vascular endothelial cells and a potent angiogenic factor. Expression of a chimeric receptor containing the extracellular domain of the *flk-1* receptor fused to the transmembrane and intracellular domains of the human c-*fms* receptor in NIH-3T3 cells, resulted in the appearance of high affinity binding sites for ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ on transfected cells. The binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1/fms* chimeric receptor of the transfected cells as well as the $VEGF_{165}$-induced autophosphorylation of the chimeric receptors were inhibited in the presence of low concentrations of heparin (1–10 μg/ml). In contrast, similar concentrations of heparin potentiated the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the endogenous VEGF receptors of the transfected cells, indicating that to some extent, the effect of heparin on ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding is receptor type-dependent.

A soluble fusion protein containing the extracellular domain of *flk-1* fused to alkaline phosphatase (*flk-1*/SEAP) was used to study the effects of heparin on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to *flk-1* in a cell-free environment. The fusion protein specifically inhibited $VEGF_{165}$-induced proliferation of vascular endothelial cells, but bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ inefficiently in the absence of heparin. Addition of low concentrations of heparin or heparan sulfate (0.1–1 μg/ml) resulted in a strong potentiation of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding, whereas higher heparin or heparan sulfate concentrations inhibited the binding. The effect of heparin on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to *flk-1*/SEAP could not be mimicked by desulfated heparin or by chondroitin sulfate. Both bFGF and aFGF inhibited the binding when low concentrations of heparin were added to the binding reaction. However, higher concentrations of heparin abolished the inhibition, indicating that the inhibition is probably caused by competition for available heparin. Taken as a whole, these results indicate that heparin-like molecules regulate the binding of $VEGF_{165}$ to its receptors in complex ways which depend on the heparin binding properties of $VEGF_{165}$, on the specific VEGF receptor type involved, and on the amount and composition of heparin-like molecules that are present on the cell surface of VEGF receptor containing cells.

Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)[1] is a secreted heparin-binding glycoprotein that displays some structural homology with PDGF. Five forms of human VEGF mRNA encoding VEGF proteins of 121, 145, 165, 189, and 206 amino acids are produced from a single gene as a result of alternative splicing (1, 2). The best characterized VEGF species is the 165-amino acid long form ($VEGF_{165}$). The active form of $VEGF_{165}$ is a homodimer of 47 kDa (1, 3) that induces angiogenesis and blood vessel permeabilization *in vivo* and displays a mitogenic activity that seems to be restricted to vascular endothelial cells (1, 4–8). Several recent reports indicate that VEGF may play an important role in the process of tumor angiogenesis (9–11). $VEGF_{165}$ binds to specific cell surface receptors which are found on vascular endothelial cells, and on several types of non-endothelial cells such as NIH-3T3 cells and melanoma cells which do not seem to respond to $VEGF_{165}$ with a mitogenic response (12–16). Cell surface-associated heparin-like molecules are required for the interaction of $VEGF_{165}$ with the three VEGF receptor types observed on vascular endothelial cells (15) and with the two receptor types present in WW94 melanoma cells (16).

The protein encoded by the *flt* gene was recently reported to be a VEGF receptor (17, 18), belonging to the PDGF receptor subfamily of the tyrosine kinase receptors (19). The *flk-1* gene was isolated from an embryonic liver-derived cell population enriched with primitive hematopoietic stem cells (20, 21) and encodes a tyrosine kinase receptor that is homologous to *flt*. The product of the *flk-1* gene and the product of its human homologue KDR also bind VEGF and undergo autophosphorylation in response to VEGF. However, it is not clear yet whether *flk-1* or *flt* can transduce a VEGF induced mitogenic signal (22, 23). Both *flt* and *flk-1* contain seven immunoglobulin-like loops in their extracellular domains, whereas other members of the PDGF receptor family such as c-*kit* or c-*fms* contain only five immunoglobulin-like loops (20).

We have expressed the *flk-1* cDNA and a chimeric gene containing the extracellular domain of *flk-1* and the tyrosine kinase domain encoded by the c-*fms* gene in NIH-3T3 cells, and we report that both the chimera and the native receptor encoded by the *flk-1* gene bind $VEGF_{165}$ with high affinity. We show that heparin concentrations that inhibit the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the chimeric receptor, and the $VEGF_{165}$-induced autophosphorylation of the chimeric receptor, potentiate the binding of $VEGF_{165}$ to endogenous receptors of NIH-3T3 cells. We also present evidence indicating that the binding of

* This work was supported by Grant 90-00477 from the United States-Israel Binational Foundation, by a grant from the Israel Cancer Research Fund, and by a grant from the Israel Ministry of Science joint program with Germany. The costs of publication of this article were defrayed in part by the payment of page charges. This article must therefore be hereby marked "*advertisement*" in accordance with 18 U.S.C. Section 1734 solely to indicate this fact.

** To whom correspondence should be addressed. Tel.: 972-4294-216; Fax: 972-4225-153; Bitnet: BIR14GN@TECHNION.TECHNION.AC.IL.

[1] The abbreviations used are: VEGF, vascular endothelial growth factor; $VEGF_{165}$, 165-amino acid form of vascular endothelial growth factor; aFGF, acidic fibroblast growth factor; bFGF, basic fibroblast growth factor; BSA, bovine serum albumin; CSF-1, colony stimulating factor 1; EGF, epidermal growth factor; PAGE, polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis; SEAP, secreted alkaline-phosphatase.

VEGF$_{165}$ to a soluble fusion protein containing the entire extracellular domain of the *flk-1* receptor is strongly enhanced by heparin, but not by chondroitin sulfate or desulfated heparin.

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Materials—Human recombinant VEGF$_{165}$ was purified from the conditioned medium of Sf-9 insect cells infected with a baculovirus-based expression vector for VEGF$_{165}$ as described (24). The factor was highly purified as determined by SDS-PAGE chromatography followed by silver staining, using three purification steps, including hydrophobic chromatography, cation-exchange chromatography, and heparin-Sepharose affinity chromatography. Recombinant human bFGF and aFGF were produced in bacteria as described (15). Recombinant PDGF-BB was kindly given by Dr. I. Vlodavsky (Hadassah-Hebrew University Hospital, Jerusalem). EGF was kindly given by Dr. Gospodarowicz (Chiron Inc.). The pMFG expression vector was kindly given by Dr. Richard Mulligan (Whitehead Institute for Biomedical research, Cambridge, MA). Intestinal mucosa-derived heparin, and chondroitin sulfate A and C, were purchased from Sigma. Oversulfated and desulfated heparin were kindly given by Dr. Svahn (Kabi-Pharmacia Therapeutics, Stockholm, Sweden). Rat liver-derived heparan-sulfate was kindly given by Dr. J. T. Gallagher (Christie Hospital, Manchester, United Kingdom). Suramin was obtained from FBA. Heparin-Sepharose was purchased from Pharmacia. Na^{125}I was purchased from New England Nuclear. Tissue culture plasticware was obtained from Nunc. Tissue culture media, sera, and cell culture supplements were from Beth-Haemek Biological Industries. Prestained high molecular weight size markers were purchased from Bio-Rad. Disuccinimidyl suberate was obtained from Pierce Chemical Co. Anti-alkaline phosphatase antibodies (A-018-01 antibody) were from Medix Biotech. The anti-c-*fms* antibodies were produced against a C-terminal peptide (GDIAQPLLQPNNYQFC). CSF-1 was purchased from Genzyme. All of the other chemicals were purchased from Sigma.

Construction of Expression Plasmids Encoding flk-1/SEAP and flk-1/c-fms Fusion Proteins—An antisense oligonucleotide (5'-GGCAGATCTTTCCAAGTTGGTCTTTTC-3') fusing the last codon (underlined) of the *flk-1* extracellular domain (20) to a *Bgl*I site (bold) was used in conjunction with a sense *flk-1* oligonucleotide (position 1880 in the *flk-1* sequence) to amplify a small fusion fragment. Digestion of the fragment with *Bgl*I and *Ear*I (position 2452 in the *flk-1* sequence) and gel purification yielded a junction fragment. A 5' *flk-1* fragment was prepared by sequential amplification and joining of the *flk-1* sequences between positions 120 and 1739 from two plasmids followed by the addition of *Hin*dIII linkers. This fragment was digested with *Hin*dIII and *Sal*I (position 535 after the ATG codon) and gel-purified. A fragment containing the bulk of the extracellular domain was purified following digestion with *Sal*I and *Ear*I. All of the above fragments were simultaneously ligated with dephosphorylated *Hin*dIII- and *Bgl*I-digested Aptag vector (25) and transformed into bacteria.

An oligonucleotide 5'-GGTGCCCAGCATCCCCCGGATGAGTTCCTC-3' joining *flk-1* sequences to c-*fms* at a position six amino acids upstream of the c-*fms* transmembrane domain (26) was synthesized for the construction of the *flk-1*/c-*fms* (the last *flk-1* amino acid is underlined), and its complement was used to amplify two fragments overlapping at the position of gene fusion. The oligonucleotides used were at positions 1880 of *flk-1* and 2032 of c-*fms*, respectively. Both of these fragments were mixed and re-amplified with the *flk-1* and c-*fms* oligonucleotides (1880 and 2032) to create the fusion fragment. The rest of the cDNA encoding the extracellular domain of *flk-1* was grafted to this fusion fragment as described for the creation of the *flk-1*/SEAP encoding sequence. The sequence encoding the intracellular and transmembrane domains of c-*fms* was grafted to this fusion fragment in a similar manner. The DNA encoding the entire chimera was then subcloned into the pMFG expression vector and expressed in NIH-3T3 cells.

Purification of the flk-1/SEAP Fusion Protein—Ten liters of conditioned medium from *flk-1*/SEAP transfected NIH-3T3 cells were concentrated 10-fold by tangential flow ultra- filtration on a 30-kDa cut-off membrane. Following concentration, the conditioned medium was clarified by filtration through a 0.2-μ filter and then loaded onto a 15-ml monoclonal anti-SEAP-Sepharose column equilibrated previously with 0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.6, 0.5 M NaCl, and 2 mM EDTA. The sample was recirculated over the column five times and then washed with 10 bed volumes of 0.2 M glycine HCl, pH 2.8, 0.5 M NaCl, and fractions were immediately neutralized with 2 M Tris base. Fractions containing purified *flk-1*/SEAP were pooled, dialyzed into 0.01 M phosphate-buffered saline, pH 7.2, and frozen at −20 °C. The purity of the *flk-1*/SEAP preparation was >90% as determined by SDS-PAGE and N terminus sequencing.

Cell Culture—NIH-3T3 cells were grown in Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum, 2 mM glutamine, and antibiotics. Human umbilical vein-derived endothelial cells were maintained, and their proliferation in response to various growth factors monitored, as described previously (3, 27).

Binding and Cross-linking of ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$—Iodination of human recombinant VEGF$_{165}$ was performed using the chloramine-T method, as described previously (12). The specific activity of the ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ was about 10^6 cpm/ng. To cross-link ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein, *flk-1*/SEAP (100 ng/ml) and ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ (10 ng/ml) were incubated at room temperature for 1 h in binding buffer containing 10 mM HEPES, 150 mM NaCl, and 20 μg/ml bovine serum albumin (BSA). The cross-linker (disuccinimidyl suberate) was then added to a final concentration of 0.2 mM for 15 min at room temperature, and the reaction was stopped with 20 mM glycine. The binding and cross-linking of ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ to *flk-1* and to *flk-1*/c-*fms* transfected and nontransfected NIH-3T3 cells were performed, and cross-linked complexes visualized, as described previously (12, 15).

VEGF$_{165}$-induced Autophosphorylation of the flk-1/c-fms Chimeric Receptor in Transfected NIH-3T3 Clone C4 Cells—Confluent cells in a 10-cm dish were transferred to serum-free medium containing 0.05 mM sodium orthovanadate, and the cells were incubated 4 more h in this medium at 37 °C. Subsequently, the medium was changed to serum-free medium containing 0.1% BSA and growth factors were added to the desired concentrations for 1–10 minutes. Following stimulation the medium was aspirated, and the cells were washed quickly with ice-cold Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline containing 1 mM sodium orthovanadate. The cells were then lysed with ice-cold lysis buffer (10 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 1% Triton X-100, 50 mM NaCl, 30 mM sodium pyrophosphate, 50 mM NaF, 2 mM sodium orthovanadate, 5 mM $ZnCl_2$, 5 mM phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride, 0.1 mg/ml aprotinin, and 0.1 mg/ml leupeptin). Lysates were transferred to chilled Eppendorf tubes and centrifuged 5 min at 12,000 × *g* at 4 °C. Supernatants from each lysate were incubated with 5 μg of affinity-purified antibody directed against c-*fms* and protein A-Sepharose for 2 h at 4 °C with constant shaking. Beads were subsequently washed once with wash buffer A (10 mM Tris-HCl, pH-8, 0.2% Triton X-100, 150 mM NaCl, 2 mM EDTA, and 1 mM sodium orthovanadate), once more with the same buffer containing 0.5 M NaCl, followed by two washes with 10 mM Tris-HCl pH-8. The beads were boiled in 2 × SDS buffer and the supernatant separated on a 4–12% gradient SDS-PAGE gel. Proteins were transferred to nitrocellulose by electroblotting. Phosphoproteins on the nitrocellulose were detected using an anti-phosphotyrosine antibody (Upstate Biotechnology, Inc.), and bound antibodies were visualized using the ECL system (Amersham).

RESULTS

The Receptor Encoded by the flk-1 Gene Binds ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ with High Affinity—Full-length *flk-1* cDNA was subcloned into the molony murine leukemia virus long terminal repeat driven expression vector pMFG. This expression vector was stably co-transfected into both NIH-3T3 cells and baby hamster kidney-derived fibroblast (BHK-21 cells) (28). The presence of VEGF binding sites was examined in geneticin-resistant clones of cells using ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ binding (12). The transfection resulted in the appearance of clones which expressed low densities (no more than 600 receptors/cell) of high affinity ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ binding sites (not shown). We could not detect a mitogenic response to VEGF$_{165}$ in these cells nor could we detect VEGF$_{165}$-induced autophosphorylation.

To try to overcome these problems we have expressed in NIH-3T3 cells a chimeric cDNA containing the extracellular domain of *flk-1* fused to the transmembrane and intracellular domains of the CSF-1 receptor (c-*fms*). Saturation binding experiments in which increasing concentrations of ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ were bound to NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells expressing the chimeric *flk-1*/c-*fms* receptors were analyzed by the method of Scatchard using the ligand program (29). These experiments revealed one class of high affinity binding sites for ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$ with a dissociation constant of 1.9×10^{-11} M. The density of these *flk-1*/c-*fms* receptors was 2800 receptors/cell (Fig. 1*B*).

Cross-linking experiments revealed a ^{125}I-VEGF$_{165}$-contain-

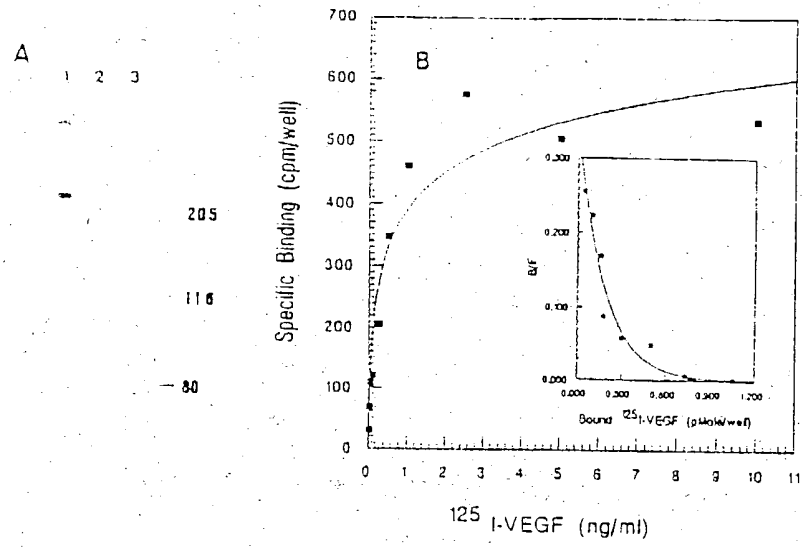


FIG. 1. **Binding and cross-linking of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to flk-1/c-*fms*-producing cells.** *A*, expression of the flk-1/c-*fms* chimeric receptor in NIH-3T3 cells. *Flk-1/c-fms*-producing (*lanes 1* and *2*) and nonproducing (*lane 3*) NIH-3T3 cells were grown to subconfluence in 6-cm dishes. The binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ (5 ng/ml) to the cells in the presence (*lane 2*) or absence (*lanes 1* and *3*) of 0.5 μg/ml of unlabeled $VEGF_{165}$ and the subsequent cross-linking of bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the receptors were conducted as described under "Materials and Methods." *B*, representative saturation binding experiment with flk-1/c-*fms* expressing NIH-3T3 cells. Cells were grown to subconfluence in 24-multiwell dishes (160,000 cells/well). Increasing concentrations of ^{125}I-VEGF, ranging from 10 pg/ml to 10 ng/ml, were bound to the cells for 2 h at 4 °C. Nonspecific binding was measured in the presence of 0.5 μg/ml unlabeled VEGF, and the specific binding was calculated by the subtraction of the nonspecific binding from the total binding. At the end of the binding reaction, the cells were washed three times with 1 ml of ice-cold Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline containing 1 mg/ml BSA. The cells were then solubilized with 0.5 ml of 0.2 N NaOH. Aliquots were counted in a γ-counter. Shown is a saturation curve in which the amount of specifically bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ is plotted as a function of added ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ concentrations and a Scatchard plot derived from the saturation curve (*inset*).

ing complex of 210 kDa in NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells which is not present in the nontransfected NIH-3T3 cells (Fig. 1*A*, compare *lanes 1* and *3*). The formation of this complex was inhibited by an excess of unlabeled $VEGF_{165}$ (Fig. 1*A*, *lane 2*). The chimeric receptor was autophosphorylated in response to $VEGF_{165}$ in a dose-dependent fashion (Fig. 2). Because of the relatively high expression levels of the *flk-1/c-fms* chimeric receptor in NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells, and because $VEGF_{165}$-induced signal transduction could be observed in these cells, we have chosen to use the NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells for further experiments.

The Effect of Heparin on the Binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the Endogenous VEGF Receptors and to flk-1/c-fms Chimeric Receptors Expressed in NIH-3T3 Cells—In the absence of exogenous heparin the endogenous VEGF receptors of the NIH-3T3 cells (15) are barely detectable (Fig. 3, *lane 1*). However, when low concentrations of heparin (1 μg/ml) are included in the binding reaction, two ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$-receptor complexes can be detected (Fig. 3, *lane 2*). The binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to these receptors is inhibited when 0.5 μg/ml of unlabeled $VEGF_{165}$ are added to the binding reaction (not shown). In contrast, the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1/c-fms* chimeric receptors expressed in transfected NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells was readily detectable, even in the absence of added heparin (Fig. 1*A* and Fig. 3, *lane 3*). As expected, the endogenous receptors of the transfected cells were not seen when the binding was done in the absence of heparin (Fig. 1*A* and Fig. 3, *lane 3*). No significant effect of heparin on ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to the *flk-1/c-fms* chimeric receptors was observed when heparin concentrations lower than 1 μg/ml were included in the binding reaction (not shown). When 1 μg/ml heparin was added to the binding reaction, the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1/c-fms* chimeric receptor was significantly inhibited, whereas the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the endogenous VEGF receptors of the transfected cells was potentiated (Fig. 3, *lane 4*). Similar concentrations of heparin also inhibited partially the $VEGF_{165}$-induced autophosphorylation of the transfected *flk-1/c-fms* chimeric receptors, indicating that the heparin-induced inhibition of $VEGF_{165}$ binding to the transfected receptors is accompanied by reduced receptor function (Fig. 4). A higher concentration of heparin (10 μg/ml) inhibited the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the endogenous and to the transfected VEGF receptors (Fig. 3, *lane 5*). It therefore follows that in the presence of 1 μg/ml heparin the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to one type of VEGF receptor is potentiated, whereas the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to another class of VEGF receptors is inhibited, although both receptor types reside in the same cell.

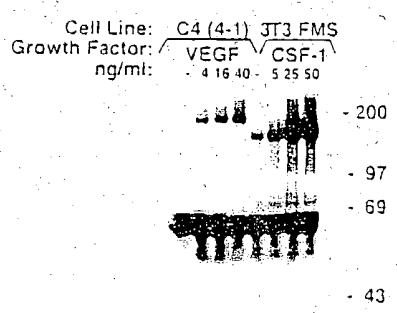


FIG. 2. **$VEGF_{165}$ induces autophosphorylation of flk-1/c-*fms* chimeric receptors.** NIH-3T3 clone C4 and NIH-3T3-*fms* cells were grown in 10-cm dishes and shifted to serum-free medium for 4 h before induction with growth factors as described under "Materials and Methods." The cells were stimulated for 8 min with the indicated concentrations of $VEGF_{165}$ or CSF-1. Following stimulation, the cells were lysed and the receptors immunoprecipitated with anti-c-*fms* antibodies as described under "Materials and Methods." Immunoprecipitated material was chromatographed on a SDS-PAGE gel, transferred to nitrocellulose, and tyrosine-phosphorylated proteins visualized as described under "Materials and Methods."

The Binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to a Soluble flk-1/SEAP Fusion Protein in a Cell-free Environment Is Potentiated by Heparin—NIH-3T3 cells, as well as most other cell types, contain cell surface-associated heparin-like molecules (30). Therefore the modulatory effects of exogenously added heparin-like mol-

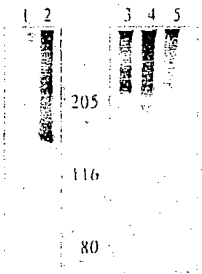


FIG. 3. **The effect of heparin on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the endogenous VEGF receptors and to the flk-1/c-*fms* chimeric receptors of NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells.** ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ (20 ng/ml) was bound to parental NIH-3T3 cell (*lanes 1* and *2*), and a lower concentration (5 ng/ml) was bound to *flk-1/c-fms*-expressing NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells (*lanes 3–5*), in the absence (*lanes 1* and *3*) or in the presence of 1 μg/ml (*lanes 2* and *4*) or 10 μg/ml (*lane 5*) heparin. The subsequent cross-linking of bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the receptors, and visualization of cross-linked complexes were done as described under "Materials and Methods." *Lanes 1* and *2* were autoradiographed for 9 days, and *lanes 3–5* were autoradiographed for 5 days.

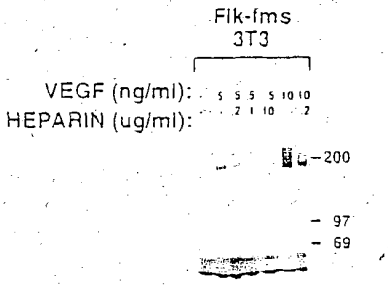


FIG. 4. **Inhibition of $VEGF_{165}$-induced phosphorylation of flk-1/c-*fms* by heparin.** NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells were grown in 10-cm dishes and shifted to serum-free medium for 4 h before the experiment as described under "Materials and Methods." The cells were stimulated with $VEGF_{165}$ at 5 or 10 ng/ml for 8 min in the absence or presence of the indicated concentrations of heparin. Following stimulation, cells were lysed and the receptors immunoprecipitated with anti-c-*fms* antibodies as described under "Materials and Methods." Immunoprecipitated material was chromatographed on a SDS-PAGE gel, transferred to nitrocellulose, and tyrosine-phosphorylated proteins were visualized as described under "Materials and Methods."

ecules on ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding are superimposed on the effects of the endogenous cell surface-bound heparin-like molecules. To study the interaction between $VEGF_{165}$ and the *flk-1* receptor in a controlled environment in which the composition of glycosaminoglycans can be controlled precisely, we produced a soluble fusion protein consisting of the extracellular domain of *flk-1* fused to secreted human placental alkaline phosphatase (SEAP). The *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein was not retained on a heparin-Sepharose column and specifically inhibited the $VEGF_{165}$-induced, but not the basic fibroblast growth factor-induced, proliferation of human umbilical vein-derived endothelial cells by more than 70% (not shown).

To study the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein, ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ was incubated with the fusion protein and bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ was subsequently cross-linked to the soluble receptor. An excess of BSA was added to the binding reaction in order to inhibit nonspecific binding. Labeled ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$-*flk-1*/SEAP complexes of 205 kDa could be detected following cross-linking, but the efficiency of complex formation in the absence of heparin was low (Fig. 5*A* and Fig. 5*B*, *lanes 1* and *3*). ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$-receptor complexes could be seen under these conditions only after prolonged exposure (not shown). This heparin-independent binding was more prominent when high concentrations of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ (40 ng/ml) were used (not shown). The addition of 0.1 μg/ml of heparin to the binding

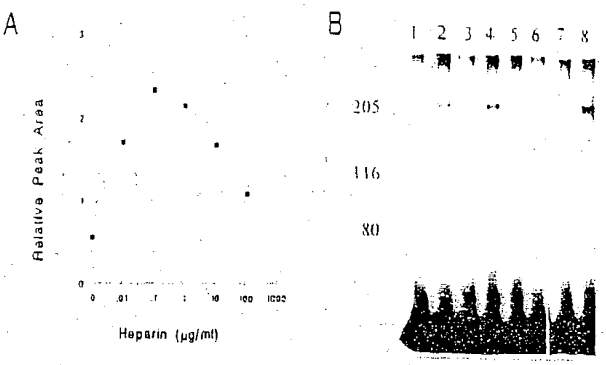


FIG. 5. **The effect of various glycosaminoglycans on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the flk-1/SEAP fusion protein.** *A*, the effect of increasing concentrations of heparin on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to flk-1/SEAP. ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ (10 ng/ml) was bound to soluble *flk-1*/SEAP (100 ng/ml) in the presence of increasing concentrations of heparin as indicated. Binding was performed for 1 h at room temperature. The subsequent cross-linking of bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein and the visualization of cross-linked complexes were done as described under "Materials and Methods." The labeling density of the ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$-*flk-1*/SEAP complexes that were formed (see *B*) were determined using a clinoscan-2 densitometer, and plotted as a function of heparin concentration. *B*, the effect of native and modified heparins and of various glycosaminoglycans on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to flk-1/SEAP. ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ (10 ng/ml) was bound to soluble *flk-1*/SEAP (100 ng/ml) in the presence of the following additions: *lanes 1* and *3*, no additions; *lanes 2* and *4*, 0.1 μg/ml heparin; *lane 5*, 0.1 μg/ml chondroitin sulfate A; *lane 6*, 0.1 μg/ml chondroitin sulfate C; *lane 7*, 0.1 μg/ml *N*/*O*-desulfated heparin; *lane 8*, 0.005 μg/ml *O*-oversulfated heparin. Binding was performed for 1 h at room temperature. The subsequent cross-linking of bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein and the visualization of cross-linked complexes were done as described under "Materials and Methods."

reaction potentiated the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the soluble receptor (Fig. 5*B*, *lanes 2* and *4*). Densitometric analysis shows that 10 ng/ml of heparin already produce a 3-fold potentiation of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to the soluble receptor (Fig. 5*A*). A maximal 4-fold potentiation of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding was produced in the presence of 0.1 μg/ml heparin, and heparin concentrations higher than 10 μg/ml progressively inhibited the binding compared with the maximal binding level observed in the presence of 0.1 μg/ml heparin (Fig. 5*A*). Labeled complexes were not formed when ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ monomers were used instead of dimers (12) or when the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ was performed using SEAP instead of the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein (not shown). The heparin concentrations that begin to produce inhibition of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein are higher than the heparin concentrations that are required for partial inhibition of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to the *flk-1*/c-*fms* chimeric receptors of transfected NIH-3T3 cells (Fig. 3). Thus 1 μg/ml heparin still potentiates strongly ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to *flk-1*/SEAP, but similar concentrations of heparin already inhibit the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/c-*fms* chimera expressed in transfected NIH-3T3 cells (Fig. 3).

The potentiating effect of heparin appeared to be specific, since identical concentrations of chondroitin sulfate A or chondroitin sulfate C did not produce any enhancement of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding (Fig. 5*B*, *lanes 5* and *6*, respectively). A similar concentration of rat liver-derived heparan sulfate produced a 2-fold potentiation of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to *flk-1*/SEAP, indicating that the potentiating effects was specific to heparin-like molecules. High concentrations of heparan sulfate (100 μg/ml or more) inhibited even the basal binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ that is observed in the absence of added heparin (not shown). The overall sulfation level of heparin seemed to be critical for the potentiation of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to *flk-1*/SEAP. When *N*/*O*-desulfated heparin (0.1 μg/ml; total sulfate content, 1%) was

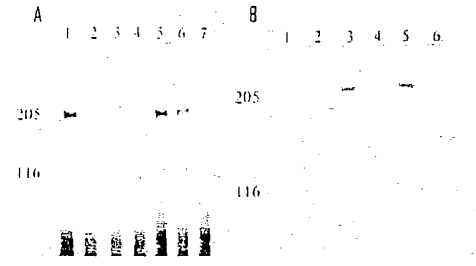


FIG. 6. Specificity of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding to the soluble flk-1/SEAP receptor. *A*, the effect of various growth factors on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to flk-1/SEAP. ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ (10 ng/ml) was bound to the *flk-1*/SEAP protein (100 ng/ml) in the presence of 0.1 μg/ml heparin and in the presence of the following additions: *lane 1*, no additions; *lane 2*, unlabeled $VEGF_{165}$ (0.5 μg/ml); *lane 3*, aFGF (0.5 μg/ml); *lane 4*, bFGF (0.5 μg/ml); *lane 5*, PDGF (0.5 μg/ml); *lane 6*, EGF (0.5 μg/ml); *lane 7*, suramin (1 mM). The binding, the subsequent cross-linking of bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein, and the visualization of cross-linked complexes were done as described under "Materials and Methods." *B*, modulation of the inhibitory effect of bFGF by heparin. ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ (10 ng/ml) was bound to the *flk-1*/SEAP protein (100 ng/ml) in the absence of heparin (*lanes 1* and *2*) or in the presence of 0.1 μg/ml heparin (*lanes 3* and *4*) or 1 μg/ml heparin (*lanes 5* and *6*). In addition, bFGF (0.5 μg/ml) was added to some of the binding reactions (*lanes 2*, *4*, and *6*). The binding, the subsequent cross-linking of bound ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein, and the visualization of cross-linked complexes were done as described under "Materials and Methods."

added instead of heparin, no enhancement of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding could be observed (Fig. 5, *lane 7*). When *O*-oversulfated heparin was used (5 ng/ml; total sulfate content, 16%) (31), the enhancement of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding appeared to be more potent than the enhancement achieved with native heparin and was maximal at 5 ng/ml of oversulfated heparin (compare Fig. 5, *lanes 8* and *4*). A higher concentration of *O*-oversulfated heparin (0.1 μg/ml) completely inhibited the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to *flk-1*/SEAP, whereas native heparin caused a similar inhibition of binding only when 100 μg/ml were included in the binding reaction (not shown).

The Specificity of the Interaction of the Soluble flk-1/SEAP with $VEGF_{165}$—To examine the specificity of the interaction between ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ and the soluble *flk-1*/SEAP receptor, binding and cross-linking experiments were conducted in the presence of 0.1 μg/ml heparin and various other substances. The binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the soluble *flk-1*/SEAP receptor was completely inhibited by 0.5 μg/ml of unlabeled $VEGF_{165}$ (Fig. 6*A*, *lane 2*) and by suramin (Fig. 6*A*, *lane 7*), a known inhibitor of angiogenesis (32) that inhibits the binding of $VEGF_{165}$ to its receptors on vascular endothelial cells (12). The binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ was not inhibited by 0.5 μg/ml of PDGF or by 0.5 μg/ml EGF (Fig. 6*A*, *lanes 5* and *6*). In contrast, aFGF (0.5 μg/ml) (Fig. 6*A*, *lane 3*) and bFGF (0.5 μg/ml) (Fig. 6*A*, *lane 4* and Fig. 6*B*, *lane 4*) inhibited the binding. Because these two factors bind heparin with high affinity, we reasoned that they could perhaps bind free heparin during the binding reaction (33) and therefore make heparin unavailable to ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$, resulting in a partial inhibition of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding. This assumption was supported by an experiment in which the binding to the *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein was done in the presence of increasing concentrations of heparin and 0.5 μg/ml bFGF (Fig. 6*B*). The inhibitory effect of bFGF was abolished when the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to *flk-1*/SEAP was done in the presence of 1 μg/ml heparin (Fig. 6*B*, *lane 6*). This experiment indicates that a potent growth factor like bFGF may, under appropriate conditions, serve in the role of a growth inhibitor using a mechanism involving competition for shared cell surface modulators of receptor binding such as heparin-like molecules.

DISCUSSION

The *flk-1* gene encodes a tyrosine kinase receptor and was isolated from a cDNA library prepared from mouse fetal liver-derived cells enriched with primitive hematopoietic stem cells (20, 21, 34). The expression of the full-length *flk-1* cDNA in cells, or the expression of a cDNA encoding a chimeric receptor containing the extracellular domain of *flk-1* fused to the transmembrane and intracellular domains of the CSF-1 receptor (*c-fms*), results in the expression of high affinity binding sites for ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$. The affinity of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ for these receptors was similar to the affinity of $VEGF_{165}$ to VEGF receptors of vascular endothelial cells. Because the chimeric receptor was expressed at higher levels in transfected cells, and because we could show $VEGF_{165}$-induced autophosphorylation of the chimeric receptors, we have used cells expressing the chimeric receptor for further studies.

The binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the endogenous VEGF receptors of vascular endothelial cells and to the small number of endogenous VEGF receptors found in NIH-3T3 cells is potentiated by the addition of 1 μg/ml heparin (15). Unexpectedly, both the $VEGF_{165}$-induced autophosphorylation of the chimeric *flk-1*/*c-fms* receptors expressed in the NIH-3T3 clone C4 cells and the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to these receptors were inhibited by heparin concentrations equal or larger than 1 μg/ml, whereas lower heparin concentrations had no effect. It follows that heparin can potentiate the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to one class of VEGF receptors and inhibit the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to another class of VEGF receptors simultaneously. These experiments indicate therefore that the effect that heparin will have on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to specific VEGF receptors depends not only on the heparin binding ability of the growth factor, but to some extent also on specific characteristics associated with specific VEGF receptor types.

It was recently reported that the ligand binding ability of fibroblast growth factor receptor-1 is regulated by the direct binding of heparin to the receptor (35). The effect of heparin on ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding could also be in part the result of a direct interaction between heparin and a subset of VEGF receptors. Alternatively, it is possible that heparin modulates the binding of $VEGF_{165}$ to its receptors indirectly through specific cell surface heparin-binding proteins. It was reported that vascular endothelial cells express cell surface heparin receptors (36), and it was shown that cell surface-bound heparin can potentiate the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the VEGF receptors of vascular endothelial cells (15). Taken together, the experiments suggest that the effect of heparin on the interaction of $VEGF_{165}$ with cell surface VEGF receptors is a complex process that needs to be studied using an experimental setup that will allow precise control of the binding environment.

We have taken a step toward the establishment of such an experimental setup by producing a soluble chimeric VEGF receptor containing the entire extracellular domain of *flk-1* fused to soluble alkaline phosphatase (25). This *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein turned out to be a specific inhibitor of $VEGF_{165}$-induced cell proliferation. This soluble receptor could perhaps be used in the future as an *in vivo* $VEGF_{165}$ antagonist. The availability of the fusion protein allowed us to conduct binding experiments in a precisely regulated cell free environment. The *flk-1*/SEAP-soluble receptor did not bind ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ efficiently in the absence of heparin, but addition of low heparin concentrations (as low as 5 ng/ml) to the binding reaction strongly potentiated the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to *flk-1*/SEAP. The effect of heparin on ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ binding could not be mimicked by chondroitin sulfate, but heparan sulfate had a similar effect. The sulfation level of the heparin was important for the potentiating effect, since desulfated heparin had no activity.

whereas oversulfated heparin potentiated the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ more efficiently than heparin. These experiments, done in a controlled cell free environment, indicate that heparin can directly modulate the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to *flk-1*/SEAP and that the modulation in this case is probably mediated exclusively through the interaction of heparin with ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$, since *flk-1*/SEAP does not appear to bind to heparin-Sepharose.

In the presence of 1 μg/ml heparin, the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/c-*fms* receptors on transfected NIH-3T3 cells is inhibited, whereas the same concentration of heparin potentiates the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the soluble *flk-1*/SEAP receptor. Since cell surfaces already contain heparin-like molecules, it follows that the effect of exogenous heparin on the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to a cell surface located VEGF receptor will be superimposed upon the effect of pre-existing cell surface associated heparin-like molecules. In addition, putative heparin binding cell surface receptors may also modulate the binding, resulting in complex final effects which are avoided by the usage of the soluble *flk-1*/SEAP receptors.

The binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the *flk-1*/SEAP-soluble receptor could not be inhibited by the growth factors PDGF and EGF (6–8). In contrast, high concentrations of bFGF and aFGF inhibited the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the soluble *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein. We found that these growth factors lost their ability to inhibit the binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{165}$ to the soluble *flk-1*/SEAP fusion protein when the binding experiments were conducted in the presence of high concentrations of heparin. It therefore follows that competition for available cell surface heparin-like molecules could perhaps function as an indirect cross-talk mechanism by which a growth factor such as bFGF may modulate the activity of another heparin binding growth factor such as $VEGF_{165}$.

To conclude, our results indicate that heparin affects the interaction of $VEGF_{165}$ with various VEGF receptors by more than one mechanism. We have also shown that heparin can modulate the interaction of $VEGF_{165}$ with the VEGF binding domain of the *flk-1* receptor, even when the binding is done in an environment that contains only *flk-1*/SEAP receptors, VEGF, and heparin. The results of this study indicate that VEGF may play an important role in the maturation process of hematopoietic cells, since the *flk-1* cDNA was originally isolated from a cell population enriched with primitive hematopoietic stem cells (20).

Acknowledgments—We thank Drs. Hela Gitay-Goren and Dina Ron for critically reading this manuscript and for helpful advice and Dr. Carl M. Svahn for the gift of modified heparins.

REFERENCES

1. Ferrara, N., Houck, K., Jakeman, L., and Leung, D. W. (1992) *Endocr. Rev.* **13**, 18–32
2. Charnock-Jones, S. D., Sharkey, A. M., Rajput-Williams, J., Burch, D., Schofield, J. P., Fountain, S. A., Boocock, C., and Smith, S. K. (1993) *Biol. Reprod.* **48**, 1120–1128
3. Peretz, D., Gitay-Goren, H., Safran, M., Kimmel, N., Gospodarowicz, D., and Neufeld, G. (1992) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **182**, 1340–1347
4. Gospodarowicz, D., Abraham, J. A., and Schilling, J. (1989) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* **86**, 7311–7315
5. Plouet, J., Schilling, J., and Gospodarowicz, D. (1989) *EMBO J.* **8**, 3801–3806
6. Leung, D. W., Cachianes, G., Kuang, W. J., Goeddel, D. V., and Ferrara, N. (1989) *Science* **246**, 1306–1309
7. Tischer, E., Gospodarowicz, D., Mitchell, R., Silva, M., Schilling, J., Lau, K., Crisp, T., Fiddes, J. C., and Abraham, J. A. (1989) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **165**, 1198–1206
8. Keck, P. J., Hauser, S. D., Krivi, G., Sanzo, K., Warren, T., Feder, J., and Connolly, D. T. (1989) *Science* **246**, 1309–1312
9. Ferrara, N., Winer, J., Burton, T., Rowland, A., Siegel, M., Phillips, H. S., Terrell, T., Keller, G. A., and Levinson, A. D. (1993) *J. Clin. Invest.* **91**, 160–170
10. Kim, K. J., Li, B., Winer, J., Armanini, M., Gillett, N., Phillips, H. S., and Ferrara, N. (1993) *Nature* **362**, 841–844
11. Shweiki, D., Itin, A., Soffer, D., and Keshet, E. (1992) *Nature* **359**, 843–845
12. Vaisman, N., Gospodarowicz, D., and Neufeld, G. (1990) *J. Biol. Chem.* **265**, 19461–19466
13. Plouet, J., and Moukadiri, H. (1990) *J. Biol. Chem.* **265**, 22071–22074
14. Olander, J. V., Connolly, D. T., and DeLarco, J. E. (1991) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **175**, 68–76
15. Gitay-Goren, H., Soker, S., Vlodavsky, I., and Neufeld, G. (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 6093–6098
16. Gitay-Goren, H., Halaban, R., and Neufeld, G. (1993) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **190**, 702–709
17. Shibuya, M., Yamaguchi, S., Yamane, A., Ikeda, T., Tojo, A., Matsushime, H., and Sato, M. (1990) *Oncogene* **5**, 519–524
18. Devries, C., Escobedo, J. A., Ueno, H., Houck, K., Ferrara, N., and Williams, L. T. (1992) *Science* **255**, 989–991
19. Ullrich, A., and Schlessinger, J. (1990) *Cell* **61**, 203–212
20. Matthews, W., Jordan, C. T., Gavin, M., Jenkins, N. A., Copeland, N. G., and Lemischka, I. R. (1991) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* **88**, 9026–9030
21. Jordan, C. T., Mckearn, J. P., and Lemischka, I. R. (1990) *Cell* **61**, 953–963
22. Terman, B. I., Dougher-Vermazen, M., Carrion, M. E., Dimitrov, D., Armellino, D. C., Gospodarowicz, D., and Böhlen, P. (1992) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* **187**, 1579–1586
23. Millauer, B., Wizigmannvoos, S., Schnurch, H., Martinez, R., Moller, N. P. H., Risau, W., and Ullrich, A. (1993) *Cell* **72**, 835–846
24. Cohen, T., Gitay-Goren, H., Neufeld, G., and Levi, B.-Z. (1992) *Growth Factors.* **7**, 131–138
25. Ornitz, D. M., Yayon, A., Flanagan, J. G., Svahn, C. M., Levi, E., and Leder, P. (1992) *Mol. Cell. Biol.* **12**, 240–247
26. Roussel, M. F., Transy, C., Keto, J.-A., Reinherz, E. L., and Sherr, C. J. (1990) *Mol. Cell Biol.* **10**, 2407–2412
27. Neufeld, G., and Gospodarowicz, D. (1988) *J. Cell. Physiol.* **136**, 537–542
28. Neufeld, G., Mitchell, R., Ponte, P., and Gospodarowicz, D. (1988) *J. Cell Biol.* **106**, 1385–1394
29. Munson, P. J., and Rodbard, D. (1980) *Anal. Biochem.* **107**, 220–239
30. Yanagishita, M., and Hascall, V. C. (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.* **267**, 9451–9454
31. Ishai-Michaeli, R., Svahn, C. M., Weber, M., Chajek-Shaul, T., Korner, G., Ekre, H.-P., and Vlodavsky, I. (1992) *Biochemistry* **31**, 2080–2088
32. Wilks, J. W., Scott, P. S., Vrba, L. K., and Cocuzza, J. M. (1991) *Int. J. Radiat. Biol.* **60**, 73–77
33. Gospodarowicz, D., Ferrara, N., Schweigerer, L., and Neufeld, G. (1987) *Endocr. Rev.* **8**, 95–114
34. Matthews, W., Jordan, C. T., Weigand, G. W., Pardoll, D., and Lemischka, I. R. (1991) *Cell* **65**, 1143–1152
35. Kan, M. K., Wang, F., Xu, J. M., Crubb, J. W., Hou, J. Z., and McKeehan, W. L. (1993) *Science* **259**, 1918–1921
36. Barzu, T., Molho, P., Tobelem, G., Petitou, M., and Caen, J. (1986) *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **845**, 196–203

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-8

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

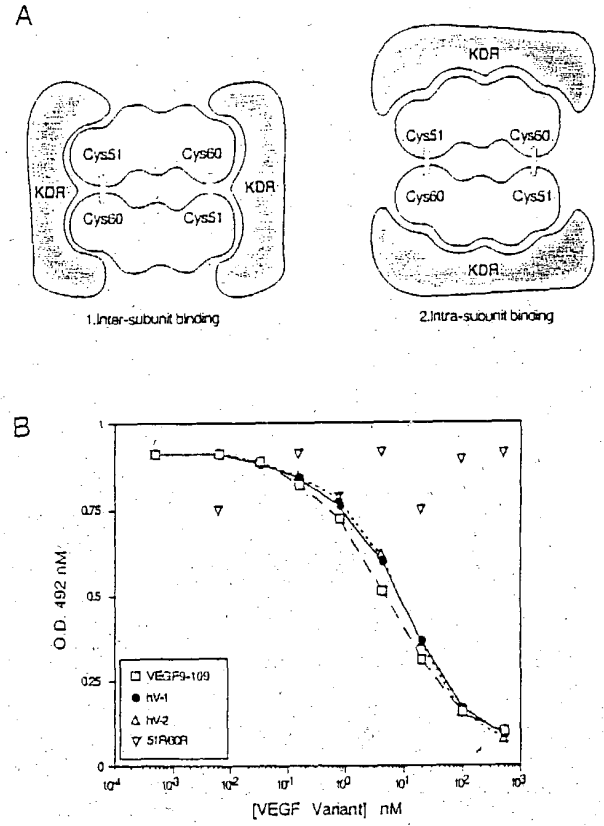


FIG. 2. *Panel A*, inter-subunit and intra-subunit models for binding two molecules of KDR receptor to dimeric VEGF. The inter-subunit disulfide bonds in VEGF are indicated. *Panel B*, displacement of biotinylated $VEGF_{1-109}$ from binding to monomeric KDR 1–7 by a monomeric form of $VEGF_{1-109}$ containing the double mutant C51R/C60R, a heterodimeric form of $VEGF_{1-109}$ that possesses either both binding sites (hV-2), or a single site at one pole of the hormone (hV-1) and the wild-type $VEGF_{1-109}$ with IC_{50} values >>500, 10, 8.9, and 4.6 nM, respectively. Dilutions of these VEGF variants were added with fixed amounts of biotinylated VEGF (1 nM) to KDR (0.5 nM) and incubated for 18 h. The complex was captured with a mAb to KDR (MAKD5) as described under "Experimental Procedures."

The IgG-like Domains 2-3 in KDR Are Sufficient for High Affinity Binding—To determine the minimal IgG-like domain requirements for binding of KDR to $VEGF_{1-109}$, a series of deletions were produced in which each of the seven IgG-like domains were deleted from the carboxyl terminus of the extracellular domain. The deletion variants were expressed initially as dimeric proteins by fusion to the CH2-CH3 domain of an antibody (KDR-IgG). This was done to facilitate purification on a Protein A affinity column (12) and to compare their affinities to monomeric forms of KDR.

The choice of deletion junction was based on homology to other members of the IgG superfamily (16, 17). Systematic carboxyl-terminal domain deletions had virtually no effect on affinity for VEGF until IgG-like domain 3 was deleted (Table I); KDR 1–2 had an affinity that was >1000-fold reduced relative to KDR 1–3 but did show specific binding at concentrations above 2 μM (data not shown). A variant of KDR missing the first NH_2-terminal domain, KDR 2–3, bound nearly as well as the full-length KDR (Table I). These data suggest that domains 2–3 are most important for high affinity binding.

To determine if these deletions had caused misfolding of the molecules, we analyzed their binding to three different anti-KDR monoclonal antibodies (Table I), one of which (MAKD6)

TABLE I
Analysis of deletions of the seven IgG-like domains in the extracellular domain of KDR

	K_d (pM),[a] $VEGF_{1-109}$	EC_{50} (nM)		
		Non-blocking		Blocking
		MAKD1	MAKD5	MAKD6
KDR 1–7-IgG	51 (±11)	2.11	1.51	0.45
KDR 1–5-IgG	143 (±24)	2.13	1.05	0.41
KDR 1–4-IgG	57 (±12)	1.74	0.95	0.44
KDR 1–3-IgG	101 (±18)	1.86	1.12	0.51
KDR 1–2-IgG	>100,000	2.04	1.02	0.60
KDR 2–3-IgG	100	ND[b]	ND[b]	0.50
KDR1–7 monomer	4990 (±700)	1.89	1.59	0.64
KDR1–3 monomer	3350 (±1000)	1.81	0.88	0.53

[a] The binding affinity of KDR variants to $VEGF_{1-109}$ was measured using a competitive radioimmunoassay and ^{125}I-$VEGF_{1-165}$ (NEN Life Science Products Inc., DuPont) as a tracer except that the affinity for KDR 2–3-IgG was measured using biotinylated VEGF as tracer as described under "Experimental Procedures."

[b] ND, not detectable.

blocks binding of VEGF. The antibodies bound to nearly all the deletion variants with affinities virtually identical to the full-length KDR 1–7 (EC_{50} ~1 nM). Deletion of domain 1 caused complete disruption for binding of the non-neutralizing antibodies (MAKD1 and MAKD5) but not the neutralizing antibody (MAKD6). Thus, the deletions do not grossly disrupt the structure of the molecules and locate the epitopes for MAKD1 and MAKD5 to domain 1 and for MAKD6 to domain 2. The fact that the antibody MAKD6, which blocks binding of VEGF, binds to domain 2 further supports the importance of domain 2 for binding VEGF.

To facilitate preparation of monomeric forms of KDR, a Genenase 1 protease cleavage site (18) was engineered at the junction of the last KDR IgG domain and the CH2 domain (19). The cleaved KDR was shown to be monomeric based on its mobility in nonreducing SDS-PAGE and gel filtration. Both the KDR 1–7 and KDR 1–3 monomers bound all three mAbs and equally well to VEGF (Table I). These results show the first three IgG-like domains are sufficient for binding of VEGF whether in monomeric or dimeric forms.

One VEGF Dimer Binds Two Molecules of the Extracellular Domain of KDR—To determine the stoichiometry of binding of $VEGF_{1-109}$ to the extracellular domain of KDR, we systematically varied the ratio of VEGF to KDR and determined the apparent size of the complexes by gel filtration. The glycosylated monomeric KDR 1–7 migrated as a single peak by gel filtration chromatography with an apparent molecular mass of ~250 kDa (Fig. 3A). By comparison, the dimeric KDR 1–7-IgG migrated as a 600-kDa peak (data not shown). Upon addition of one equivalent of VEGF (dimer) per two equivalents of KDR (monomer), a single complex peak was formed of apparent molecular mass ~400 kDa. A minor shoulder was seen that might represent the slight excess KDR monomer in the mixture. The fact that the 2:1 complex is smaller by gel filtration than expected from the sum of the component molecular masses (520 kDa) may be that VEGF aligns the receptor subunits in a more compact fashion.

Further additions of 2 and 3 equivalents of VEGF did not change the position of the high molecular weight peak, and excess VEGF accumulated as the free dimeric hormone (Fig. 3A). The height of the free VEGF peak was small because VEGF contains no tryptophan residues and therefore has a small molar absorbance at 280 nm. When the ratio of KDR to VEGF exceeded 2:1, free KDR 1–7 accumulated as a shoulder. The hV-1 heterodimeric variant of VEGF forms a 1:1 complex with monomeric KDR. This complex migrated at a position that was intermediate between the free KDR 1–7 and the 2:1

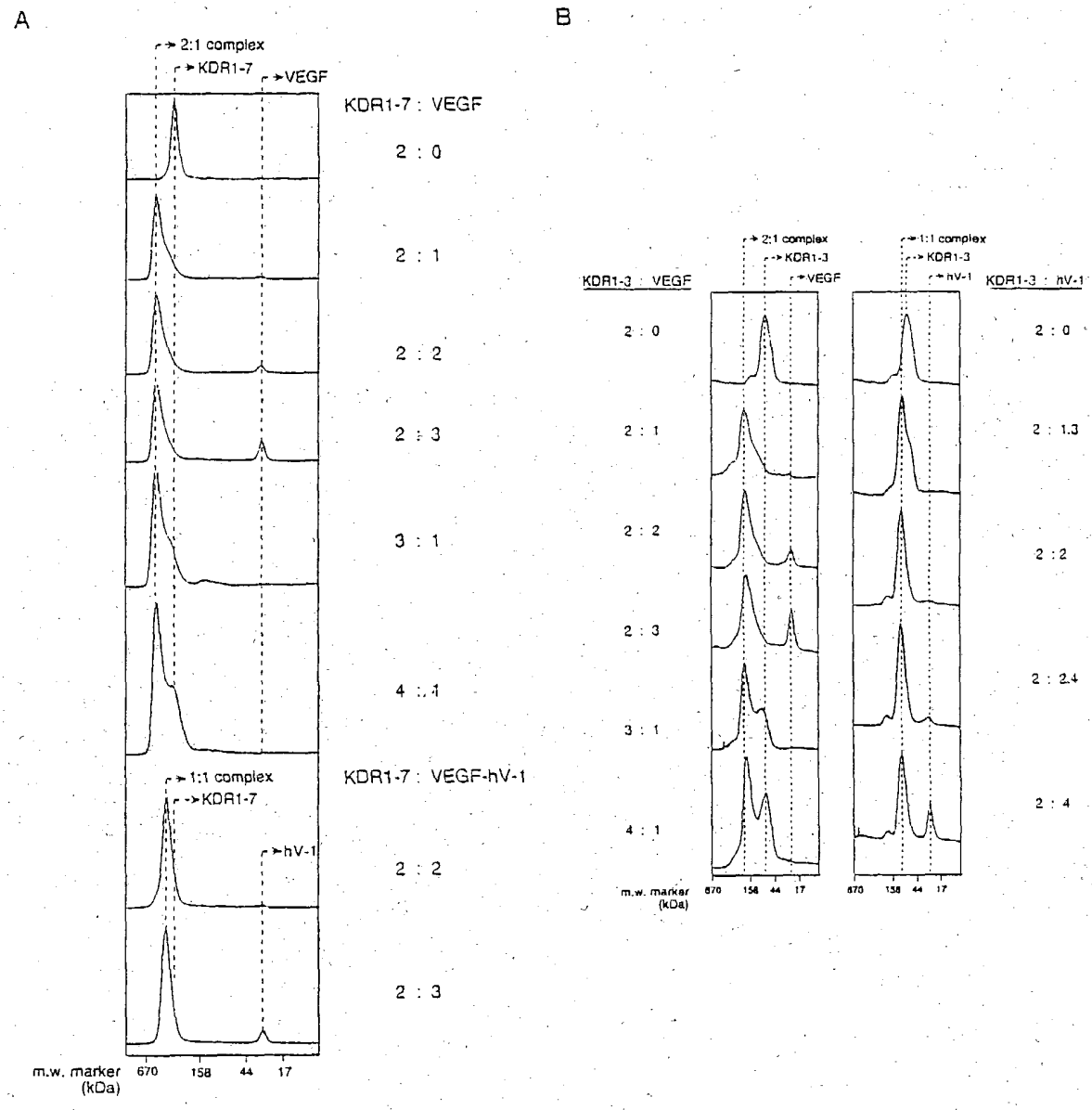


FIG. 3. *Panel A*, gel filtration chromatography of various ratios of KDR 1–7 monomer and VEGF dimer (*upper six chromatograms*) or VEGF heterodimer (hV-1) containing a single functional binding site (*lower two chromatograms*). The concentration of KDR 1–7 monomer was 1 μM except at ratios of 3:1 and 4:1, where the concentration of KDR 1–7 was 1.5 and 2 μM, respectively. The quantitation of protein was determined by amino acids hydrolysis and absorbance at 280 nM. *Panel B*, gel filtration chromatography of various ratios of KDR 1–3 monomer and VEGF dimer (*six chromatograms* on the *left*) or hV-1 (*five chromatograms* on the *right*). The concentration of KDR 1–3 monomer was held constant at 1 μM except at ratios of 3:1 and 4:1, where KDR 1–3 monomer was 1.5 and 2 μM, respectively.

KDR·VEGF complex. When the ratio of the hV-1 to KDR 1–7 exceeded unity, the free heterodimer accumulated in the chromatogram.

Parallel experiments were carried out with the monomeric form of KDR 1–3 (Fig. 3*B*). When no VEGF was present, KDR 1–3 migrated as a single peak of apparent molecular mass of ~70 kDa. Addition of 1 equivalent of VEGF dimer to 2 equivalent of KDR 1–3 resulted in forming a peak with apparent molecular mass of ~160 kDa. Addition of 2 and 3 equivalents of VEGF did not change the position of the complex peak, but free VEGF accumulated. Increasing additions of KDR 1–3 in excess of the 2:1 ratio to VEGF dimer showed increasing appearance of free KDR 1–3. A similar set of experiments with the hV-1 showed it maximally formed a 1:1 complex (Fig. 3*B*); when the ratio of either the variant or KDR 1–3 was skewed from unity, the free excess component accumulated. These experiments explicitly show that two molecules of KDR bind to one VEGF dimer, and that form of KDR lacking IgG-like domains 4–7 are capable of producing the 2:1 complex in solution. When VEGF is engineered to have only one functional binding site (hV-1) it cannot dimerize the receptor *in vitro*.

VEGF Binds Avidly to Dimeric versus Monomeric Forms of KDR—Given the fact that the VEGF dimer binds two molecules of receptor we wished to determine to what extent predimerization of the receptor influenced affinity. This can be readily seen by comparing the binding constants for the monomeric and dimeric forms of KDR (Table I). KDR-IgG fusions containing domains 1–7 or 1–3 bound 50–100-fold stronger

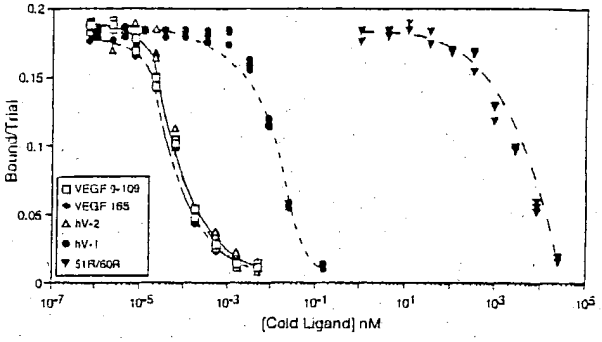


FIG. 4. **VEGF containing two sites binds much stronger to predimerized forms of KDR.** Displacement of ^{125}I-VEGF$_{1-165}$ from the dimeric KDR 1–7-IgG is shown for wild-type VEGF$_{1-165}$, VEGF$_{8-109}$, the single disulfide heterodimer containing both binding sites (hV-2) or single binding site (hV-1), and monomeric VEGF$_{1-109}$, C51R/C60R. The IC_{50} values from here and Fig. 2*B* are summarized in Table II.

than their monomeric counterparts. The affinity of the single-site heterodimeric VEGF for binding to the dimeric KDR IgG fusion was about 200-fold weaker than wild-type VEGF (Fig. 4). In contrast, binding to monomeric KDR for the heterodimer was only 2-fold weaker than native VEGF (Fig. 2*B*). These data, summarized in Table II, show that binding of dimeric VEGF to predimerized KDR is ~100-fold stronger than when either the hormone or receptor contains a single binding site.

VEGF Binds Virtually the Same Way to Monomeric and Dimeric KDR—Given the strong avidity component to binding of VEGF to its receptor, we wished to determine if VEGF binds the same way to monomeric and dimeric forms of KDR 1–7. We have previously reported the alanine scan of VEGF for binding to KDR-IgG (9). Here we analyze the binding of these same alanine mutants to monomeric KDR (Table III). The data show that the same set of alanine mutants that are most disruptive for binding to KDR-IgG are also strongly disruptive to binding monomeric KDR.

There are some subtle and systematic differences in the way the alanine mutants bind the monomeric *versus* dimeric KDR. For example M18A, I43A, I46A, E64A, and I83A were more disruptive to affinity (by factors ranging from 2–8-fold) when tested against the monomeric *versus* dimeric KDR. Only F17A was more disruptive to the dimer than the monomer (by ~2-fold). The biased suppression of the disruptive effects of the alanine mutations when binding to the dimer is likely caused from avidity in binding. We conclude there are no gross differences in the way monomeric and dimeric forms of KDR bind to VEGF.

KDR Domains 1–3 Are Sufficient for Signaling in Cells—NIH 3T3 fibroblast cells that contain the extracellular domain of colony-stimulating factor receptor fused to the transmembrane and intracellular domain of the Flt-4 receptor incorporate [^{3}H]thymidine and proliferate when treated with the colony-stimulating factor (20). To produce a VEGF responsive cell line, we made a similar chimera in which the seven IgG-like domains of KDR were linked to the transmembrane and intracellular kinase domain of Flt-4. At low concentrations of VEGF this cell line incorporated [^{3}H]thymidine with an EC_{50} of ~100 pM (Fig. 5*A*); high concentrations of VEGF (>1 μM) showed inhibition. Such a bell-shaped dose-response curve is anticipated for a two-site hormone dimerizing two identical receptors (21). The hV-1 was inactive (Fig. 5*A*).

A similar construct was produced in which only domains 1–3 of KDR were linked to Flt-4. These cells also incorporated [^{3}H]thymidine in response to VEGF (Fig. 5*B*) but did so with a higher EC_{50} (~10 nM) and lower maximal response. We did not go to high enough concentrations to see inhibition by VEGF. The hV-1 was virtually inactive. Primary human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HuVEC) showed a bell-shaped dose-response curve (Fig. 5*C*). We resist making quantitative comparisons between HuVEC and KDR expressed NIH 3T3 cells given the fact that the HuVEC contain both KDR and Flt-1 receptors (22).

TABLE II

Summary of dissociation constants (K_d) for binding of monomeric and dimeric forms of VEGF and KDR 1–7

VEGF$_{1-109}$	KDR	
	Monomer	Dimer
Monomer[a]	~20 μM	1.5 μM
Single-site heterodimer (hV-1)[a]	10 nM	7 nM
Wild-type dimer[b]	5 nM	50 pM

[a] Data from Figs. 2*B* and 4. Data for the monomeric VEGF binding to monomeric KDR was from other experiments not shown.
[b] Data from Table I.

TABLE III

The comparison of the effect alanine mutants of VEGF$_{1-109}$ on binding to KDR 1–7-IgG or KDR1–7 monomer

The relative binding affinity was expressed as the fold difference of alanine mutants with VEGF$_{1-109}$ in the competitive binding assay as described under "Experimental Procedures." Standard deviations in these measurements averaged ±25% of the value shown. Residues are shown in two groups (*e.g.* F17A or I43A′) to indicate that they are presented in the same epitope but from different subunits. Each mutant is present twice in the dimer.

	KDR-IgG dimer	KDR monomer
VEGF wt	1	1
F17A	230	91
M18A	11	98
E64A	120	460
I43A′	25	120
Y45A′	140	170
I46A′	400	1000
Q79A′	100	
I83A′	360	810

The difference in EC_{50} values and maximal response for the KDR 1–7 and KDR 1–3 cell lines likely resulted from the fact that the number of functional receptors on the KDR 1–3 cell line was at least 10-fold lower based upon binding of ^{125}I-VEGF (data not shown). To explore the effect of receptor number on signaling directly we isolated three different clones of cells that varied over a range of 12-fold in the amount of the KDR 1–7 that specifically bound ^{125}I-VEGF (Fig. 6*A*). The maximal levels of [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation correlated with the number of receptors expressed on these cells and the EC_{50} values correlated inversely with the number of receptors (Fig. 6*B*). It is interesting that the basal levels of [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation correlated with the receptor number as well, suggesting that receptors can preassociate and signal weakly in the absence of exogenous VEGF. All of the transfectants containing the KDR 1–3 construct expressed much lower levels of receptors which may suggest that domains 4–7 are important for high level expression and display of the receptor.

Antagonism of VEGF Receptors by the Single-site Heterodimer of VEGF—Given the ability of hV-1 to bind but not dimerize and activate KDR (Fig. 5), we studied its ability to antagonize signaling of KDR. Indeed the heterodimer antagonizes [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation in the 3T3 cells transfected with the chimeric KDR (1–7)-Flt-4 receptor and HuVEC with an IC_{50} of ~300 and ~20 nM, respectively (Fig. 7). The fact that the heterodimer is less effective on the 3T3-transfected cells *versus* HuVEC likely reflects the fact that the former expresses much higher levels of receptors (Fig. 6*A*).

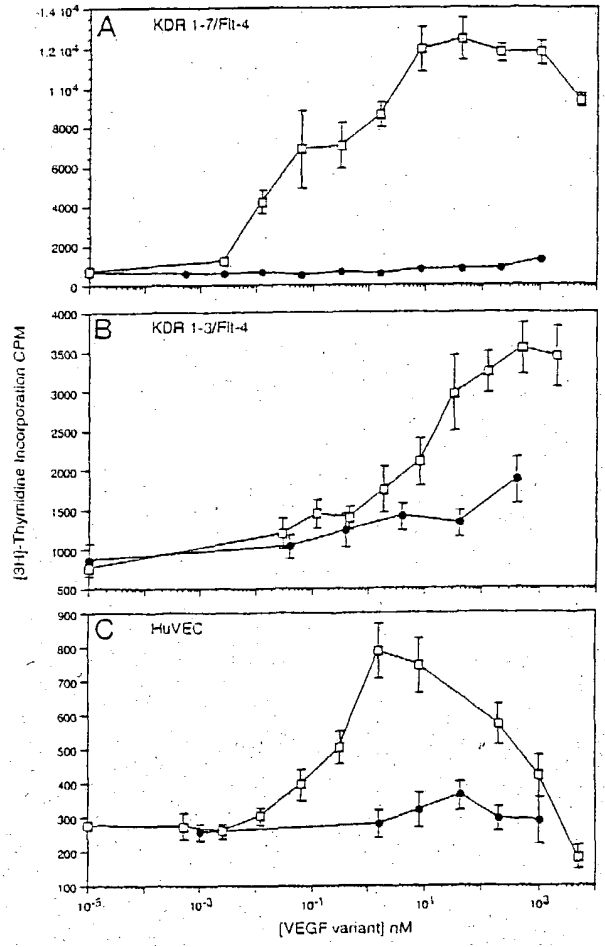


FIG. 5. **The agonistic effects of VEGF variants on DNA synthesis of 3T3 cells stably expressing KDR 1–7 (ECD)/Flt4 (ICD) (*Panel A*), KDR 1–3 (ECD)/Flt-4 (ICD) (*Panel B*), or HuVEC (*Panel C*).** Cells were treated for 18 h with either $VEGF_{9-109}$ (*open squares*) or the $VEGF_{1-109}$ heterodimer with single binding site, hV-1 (*closed circles*). Cells were pulsed with [^{3}H]thymidine for 6 h and analyzed as described under "Experimental Procedures."

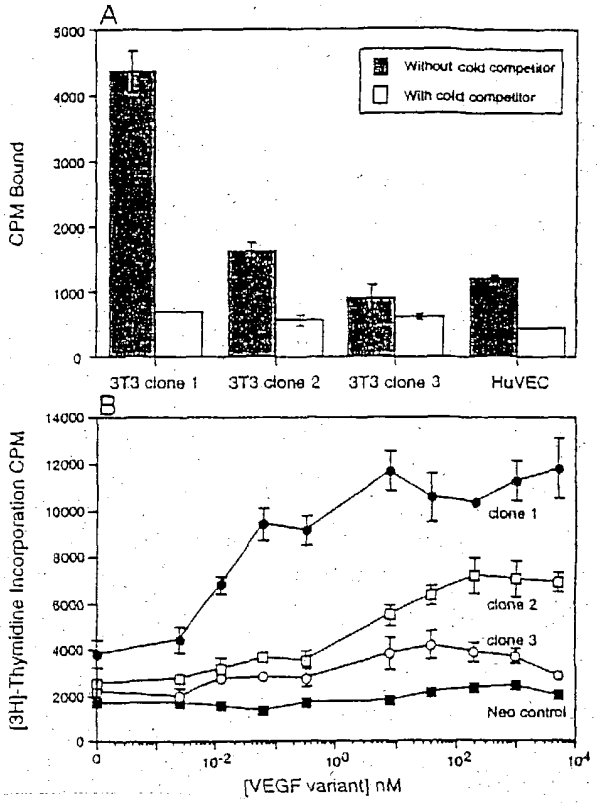


FIG. 6. **3T3 cells stably expressing varying amounts of KDR 1–7 (ECD)/Flt-4 (ICD) receptor respond to $VEGF_{9-109}$ with different values of EC_{50} and maximal response.** *Panel A*, three different 3T3 cell clones expressing varying amounts of the KDR 1–7 (ECD)/Flt-4 (ICD) were isolated and ranked according to the amount of functional binding sites for VEGF as determined by specific binding of ^{125}I-$VEGF_{1-165}$. The same number of 3T3 cells from transfected clones 1, 2, and 3 or HuVEC were plated on the 24-well plate. The ^{125}I-$VEGF_{1-165}$ (0.1 nM) was added with (*open bar*) or without (*filled bar*) a 200-fold molar excess of cold $VEGF_{1-165}$ for 2 h and cells were washed and counted. *Panel B*, these same cell lines were treated with increasing concentrations of $VEGF_{9-109}$ and [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation was measured. The three clones of 3T3 cells expressing KDR 1–7/Flt-4, NEO transfected control cells, and HuVEC were fasted and treated with serial dilutions of $VEGF_{9-109}$ for 18 h. Cells were pulsed with [^{3}H]thymidine for 6 h before harvesting as described under "Experimental Procedures."

DISCUSSION

KDR Binds Across the VEGF Dimer Interface—The data here combined with previous mutational analysis (9) suggest that binding occurs across the VEGF dimer interface (Fig. 2A). It may be a general feature of the cystine-knot hormones that the receptor binds at the interface between hormone subunits. A structure of domain 2 of the Flt-1 receptor bound to VEGF shows it binds across the dimer interface (23). A heterodimer containing one molecule of VEGF linked to its homolog, PLGF, is only 20–50-fold reduced as a mitogen on HuVEC cells (EC_{50} ~ 50 nM) whereas the PLGF homodimers are inactive (24). The fact the VEGF/PLGF heterodimer shows any activity can be rationalized from our mutational analysis (Table III). Some of the critical binding determinants (Phe-17, Glu-64, Gln-79, and Ile-83) are conserved in PLGF and others are reasonably conservative substitutions (M18Q, I43V, Y45H and I46M). These later substitutions would likely have a much more dramatic effect when present in both subunits, thus accounting for the absence of significant mitogenic activity for the PLGF homodimer up to the concentrations that were tested (~1 μM). Similar observations have been made for homodimers and heterodimers of PDGF (isoforms AA, AB, and BB) for binding the PDGF-α and -β receptors (25). Mutational analysis of nerve growth factor, another member of the cystine-knot family of dimeric hormones, shows a broad patch of residues involved in binding receptor that spans the interface between subunits (26).

Requirements and Consequences for Receptor Dimerization—Hormone-induced receptor dimerization is a general mechanism for activation of tyrosine kinase receptors (27). All receptors that bind cystine-knot hormone dimers are presumed to be activated by receptor dimerization (6). Here, gel filtration experiments provide *in vitro* evidence that VEGF binds two molecules of the extracellular domain of KDR. The dimerized complex appears to be very stable since excess VEGF is unable to dissociate the complex to 1:1 complex. This dimerization reaction is critical for signaling because the VEGF heterodimer, hV-1, with only one functional site is inactive in cell-based assays and antagonizes the action of wild-type VEGF. Receptor dimerization is also supported by the observation that cell-based assays show a bell-shaped dose-response curve with respect to VEGF. PDGF isoforms have been shown to induce

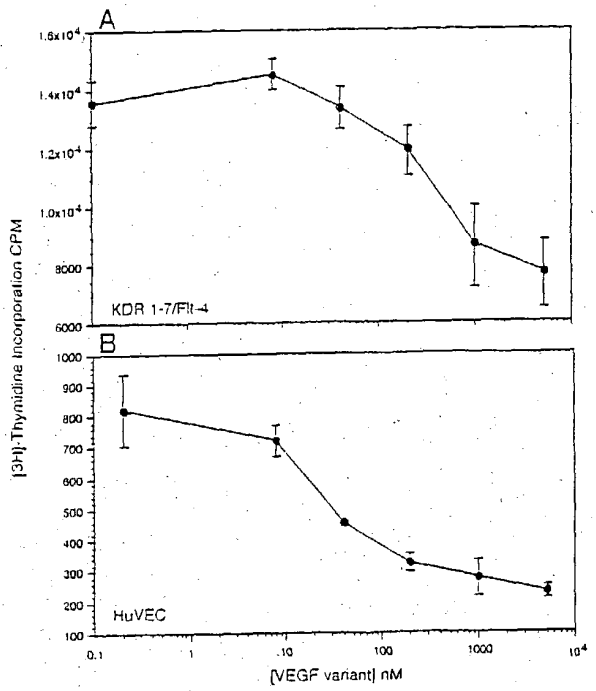


FIG. 7. **The antagonistic effects of VEGF single site heterodimer (hV-1) on DNA synthesis of 3T3 cells stably expressing KDR 1–7 (ECD)/Flt-4 (ICD) (*Panel A*) or HuVEC (*Panel B*).** Cells were incubated with either 0.1 nM $VEGF_{8-109}$ (for 3T3 cells) or 1 nM $VEGF_{8-109}$ (HuVEC) to induce 90% maximal incorporation of [^{3}H]thymidine together with increasing concentrations of the hV-1.

dimerization of the extracellular domains of the PDGF-α and -β receptors *in vitro* (28). Binding of the dimeric hormone, SCF, to the extracellular domain of the Kit receptor, a tyrosine kinase receptor of the IgG class, causes dimerization *in vitro* (29–31), and induces a bell-shaped dose-response curve *in vivo* (30).

Predimerized forms of KDR bind VEGF 100-fold more tightly than monomeric forms of KDR showing a strong avidity component in binding. Dimeric receptor fusion proteins, such as IgG fusions, or receptors bound to monoclonal antibodies are often used as convenient assay reagents for hormones and their variants. The data presented here show that there is a significant avidity component to binding in these fusions that affects the affinity constants. The avidity effect observed here is not the result of an alternate way that VEGF binds the dimeric KDR because alanine mutations in VEGF that are most disruptive to binding monomeric KDR are also the ones that most affect binding to dimeric KDR (Table III).

We observed that wild-type $VEGF_{1-109}$ binds about 100-fold more tightly than the single-site heterodimer to cells expressing KDR 1–7 (not shown). This suggests that receptors on cells may be loosely associated. Moreover, NIH 3T3 cells expressing larger numbers of VEGF receptors showed a higher basal level of [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation in the absence of VEGF (Fig. 6*B*), suggesting that receptors on cells have an intrinsic ability to dimerize in the absence of ligand. Similar observations have been made for cells overexpressing various tyrosine kinase receptors, such as variants of the EGF receptor (27). Overexpression of the PDGF receptors can induce receptor autophosphorylation in the absence of ligand, and it is even possible to cross-link small amounts of the extracellular domains in the absence of PDGF (28). The fact we did not see evidence for dimerization by gel filtration of the ecodomains of KDR 1–7 or 1–3 in the absence of VEGF may only reflect the sensitivity of the method and that the receptors have a much higher effective concentration on cells than in our solution experiments (~1 μM).

Deletion experiments showed that domains 2–3 of KDR are sufficient and necessary for high affinity binding of VEGF (Table I). Cells can signal when transfected with KDR domain 1–3 linked to Flt-4, even with low receptor expression, suggesting that domains 4–7 are not essential for signaling. We cannot rule out other roles for these domains; they may stabilize the signal transduction complex and/or provide for better display and expression of the receptor. Systematic deletion experiments have been conducted on at least four other tyrosine kinase receptors of the IgG class, and generally show that binding is dominated by IgG-like domains 2–3. Deletion experiments showed the first three of the five IgG-like domains in the Kit receptor are required for binding of SCF, but there is uncertainty regarding the role of domain 4 in signaling (30, 31). An antibody directed toward domain 4 blocked signaling in cells transfected with Kit, and deletion of domain 4 blocked signaling but not stem cell factor binding (30). In contrast, biophysical experiments (31) showed that Kit 1–3 can dimerize in solution with stem cell factor and both the enthalpy and free energy of binding were indistinguishable from Kit 1–5. In either case, both groups agree that the ligand-binding site for stem cell factor is contained in the first three IgG-like domains.

Deletion analysis of PDGF-α receptor, which contains five IgG-like domains, has shown that domains 2–3 are sufficient for binding PDGF isoforms although the presence of domain 1 has a small differential effect on binding PDGF-AA *versus* PDGF-BB (32). Deletion analysis of the fibroblast growth factor receptor, which contains three IgG-like domains, showed that domains 2–3 are sufficient for high affinity binding of fibroblast growth factor (33). Deletion experiments in Flt-1, which like KDR contains seven IgG-like domains, have shown that the VEGF-binding site is located among the first three IgG-like domains (34–36) and domain 2 of Flt-1 alone can bind VEGF tightly (23). Thus, domain 2 may plays a dominant role in all five of these tyrosine kinase receptors that have IgG-like domains and may be general to the other members of this class.

Mechanism-based Antagonsits of VEGF—Antagonists to VEGF may be very useful in preventing tumor angiogenesis and retinopathy diseases. Here, we have elucidated the functional requirements for receptor binding and activation and designed an antagonist, hV-1, for the proliferation of HuVEC cells based on this knowledge. The fact the IC_{50} of hV-1 for inhibiting VEGF in HuVEC (~20 nM) is ~100-fold higher than the EC_{50} of VEGF stimulating growth (~0.2 nM) likely reflects the avidity effect described above. We believe the hV-1 antagonize VEGF stimulation of HuVEC by blocking the dimerization of KDR since KDR is more important for signaling mitogensis. However, the hV-1 does bind Flt-1 with near wild-type affinity and we are currently looking at its ability to activate Flt-1. Alanine scanning of both receptor-binding sites on VEGF suggests that the binding sites for KDR and Flt-1 overlap and are not identical (9, 23, 37). Based on these results it should also be possible to design receptor specific antagonists and further elucidate the functions of the two receptors. Overall, these studies provide a basis from which we can produce new analogs of VEGF to both probe its biology and generate new and potent therapeutics.

Acknowledgments—We thank Toni Klassen and Jin Kim for mAbs to KDR, Hans Christinger for providing purified VEGF, Napoleone Ferrara for providing the plasmid pHEBO23-KDR-IgG and pHEBO23-Flt-1-IgG, Jennifer Singh, Richard DeMarco, Michael Clasen for technical support, the DNA Synthesis Group at Genentech for oligonucleotides, and David Wood for the graphics.

REFERENCES

1. Aiello, L. P., Avery, R. L., Arrigg, P. G., Keyt, B. A., Jampel, H. D., Shah, S. T., Pasquale, L. R., Thieme, H., Iwamoto, M. A., and Park, J. E. (1994) *N. Engl. J. Med.* 331, 1480–1487
2. Folkman, J. (1995) *Nat. Med.* 1, 27–31
3. Ferrara, N., Houck, K., Jakeman, L., and Leung, D. W. (1992) *Endocr. Rev.* 13, 18–32
4. Shalaby, F., Rossant, J., Yamaguchi, T. P., Gertsenstein, M., Wu, X.-F., Breitman, M. L., and Schuh, A. C. (1995) *Nature* 376, 62–66
5. Fong, G.-H., Rossant, J., Gertsenstein, M., and Breitman, M. L. (1995) *Nature* 376, 66–74
6. Sun, P. D., and Davies, D. R. (1995) *Annu. Rev. Biophys. Biomol. Struct.* 24, 269–291
7. Leung, D. W., Cachianes, G., Kuang, W.-J., Goeddel, D. V., and Ferrara, N. (1989) *Science* 246, 1306–1309
8. Houck, K. A., Ferrara, N., Winer, J., Cachianes, G., Li, B., and Leung, D. W. (1991) *Mol. Endocinol.* 5, 1806–1814
9. Muller, Y. A., Li, B., Christinger, H. W., Wells, J. A., Cunningham, B. C., and De Vos, A. M. (1997) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 94, 7192–7197
10. Park, J. E., Chen, H. H., Winer, J., Houck, K. A., and Ferrara, N. (1994) *J. Biol. Chem.* 269, 25646–25654
11. Kunkle, T. A. (1985) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 82, 488–492
12. Chamow, S. M., and Ashkenazi, A. (1996) *Trends Biotechnol.* 14, 52–60
13. Lucas, B. K., Giere, L. M., DeMarco, R. A., Shen, A., Chisholm, V., and Crowley, C. W. (1996) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 24, 1774–1779
14. Potgens, A. J., Lubsen, N. H., van Altena, M. C., Vermeulen, R., Bakker, A., Schoenmakers, J. G. G., Ruiter, D. J., and de Waal, R. M. W. (1994) *J. Biol. Chem.* 269, 32879–32885
15. Graham, F. L., and Van der Eb, A. J. (1973) *Virology* 52, 456–467
16. Williams, A. F., and Barclay, A. N. (1988) *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 6, 381–405
17. Finnerty, H., Kelleher, K., Morris, G. E., Bean, K., Merberg, D. M., Kriz, R., Morris, J. C., Sookdeo, H., Turner, K. J., and Wood, C. R. (1993) *Oncogene* 8, 2293–2298
18. Carter, P., and Wells, J. A. (1987) *Science* 24, 394–399
19. Beck, J. T., Marsters, S. A., Harris, R. J., Carter, P., Ashkenazi, A., and Chamow, S. M. (1994) *Mol. Immunol.* 31, 1335–1344
20. Pajusola, K., Aprelikova, O., Peiicci, G., Weich, H., Claesson-Welsh, L., and Alitalo, K. (1994) *Oncogene* 9, 3545–3555
21. Fuh, G. Cunningham, B. C., Fukunaga, R., Nagata, S., Goeddel, D. V., and Wells, J. A. (1992) *Science* 256, 1677–1680
22. Soker, S., Fidder, H., Neufeld, G., and Klagsbrun, M. (1996) *J. Biol. Chem.* 271, 5761–5767
23. Weismann, C., Fuh, G., Christinger, H. W., Eigenbrot, C., Wells, J. A., and De Vos, A. M. (1997) *Cell* 91, 695–704
24. Cao, Y., Chen, H., Zhou, L., Chiang, M.-K., Anand-Apte, B. Weatherbee, J. A., Wang, Y., Fang, F., Flanagan, J. G., and Tsang, M. L.-S. (1996) *J. Biol. Chem.* 271, 3154–3162
25. Heidin, C. H. (1995) *Cell* 80, 213–223
26. Bradshaw, R. A., Murray-Rust, J., Ibanez, C. F., McDonald, N. Q., Lapatto, R., and Blundell, T. L. (1994) *Protein Sci.* 3, 901–913
27. Ullrich, A., and Schlessinger, J. (1990) *Cell* 61, 203–212
28. Herren, B., Rooney, B., Weyer, K. A., Iberg, N., Schmid, G., and Pech, M. (1993) *J. Biol. Chem.* 268, 15088–15095
29. Lev, S., Yarden, Y., and Givol, D. (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.* 267, 15970–15977
30. Blechman, J. M., Lev, S., Barg, J., Eisenstein, M., Vaks, B., Vogel, Z., Givol, D., and Yarden, Y. (1995) *Cell* 80, 103–113
31. Lemmon, M. A., Pinchasi, D., Zhou, M., Lax, I., and Schlessinger, J. (1997) *J. Biol. Chem.* 272, 6311–6317
32. Mahadevan, D., Yu, J.-C., Saldanha, J. W., Thanki, N., McPhie, P., Uren, A., LaRochelle, W. J., and Heidaran, M. A. (1995) *J. Biol. Chem.* 270, 27596–27600
33. Wang, F., Kan, M., Xu, J., Yan, G., and McKeehan, W. L. (1995) *J. Biol. Chem.* 270, 10222–10230
34. Davis-Smyth, T., Chen, H., Park, J., Presta, L. G., and Ferrara, N. (1996) *EMBO J.* 15, 4919–4927
35. Cunningham, S. A., Stephan, C. C., Arrate, M. P., Ayer, K. G., and Brock, T. A. (1997) *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 231, 596–599
36. Barleon, B., Totzke, F., Herzog, C., Blanke, S., Kremmer, E., Siemeister, G., Marme, D., and Martiny-Baron, G. (1997) *J. Biol. Chem.* 272, 10382–10388
37. Keyt, B. A., Nguyen, H. V., Berleau, L. T., Duarte, C. M., Park, J., Chen, H., and Ferrara N. (1996) *J. Biol. Chem.* 271, 5638–5646

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-9

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

EXEMPLARY PORTIONS OF HGS EVIDENCE DEVOTED TO EXPERIMENTATION TO TRY TO COMPLETE THE VEGF2 INVENTION

Further experimentation suggested by Dr. Mattick in order to understand the VEGF2 invention or how to make it work:

AJM1 3.15	Computer analysis of sequence for signal peptide.
AJM1 3.16-19	Expression of protein from DNA
AJM1 3.18	Overcoming obstacle of realizing that protein doesn't express because signal sequence is missing or faulty.
AJM1 3.33	Experimentation to express a biologically active VEGF2
AJM1 3.34	Experimentation to obtain VEGF2 polynucleotide sequences.
AJM1 4.3-4.13	Experimentation to express VEGF2 notwithstanding "the fact that the signal sequence information was incomplete" in the opposed application.
AJM1 4.15-4.16	Confirming biological activity, suggestion of collaboration
AJM1 4.64-4.68	Experimentation to produce fragments analogues and derivatives, and identification of such molecules
AJM1 4.77	Expression of incomplete sequence
AJM1 4.82-4.83	Production of antibodies and determination of VEGF2 activity

Further experimentation suggested by Dr. Gamble in order to understand the VEGF2 invention or how to make it work:

AJG1 5.14-5.19	Assaying for angiogenic properties
AJG1 7.9-7.10	Testing for *in vivo* or *in vitro* activity
AJG1 7.11	Distinguishing between growth factors
AJG1 7.20	Antibody production

AJG1 7.35	Experimentation to produce fragments analogues and derivatives

Further experimentation suggested by Dr. Hayward in order to understand the VEGF2 invention or how to make it work:

ANH1 3.11-3.12	Designing suitable hybridization conditions
ANH1 3.19-3.21, 4.20	Use of heterologous signal sequence
ANH1 3.25	5' end cloning
ANH1 3.27	Testing for a biological activity
ANH1 3.29	Testing VEGF2 in proliferation, angiogenesis and wound healing assays
ANH1 3.34	Testing of receptor binding
ANH1 4.4	Activity assays
ANH1 4.26-4.27	Redesigning Example 2 in the application in order to attempt to achieve the results that were reported

Further experimentation suggested by Dr. Rapoport in order to understand the VEGF2 invention or how to make it work: (essentially entire declaration, devoted to identifying signal peptide defect in patent application, and then trying to overcome it.)

Further experimentation suggested by Dr. Aaronson in order to understand the VEGF2 invention or how to make it work:

ASA1 at 16	Engineering a heterologous signal sequence

Further experimentation suggested by Dr. Power in order to understand the VEGF2 invention or how to make it work: (Entire Declaration devoted to signal peptide experiments which are not based on the application's teachings.)

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-10

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

EXEMPLARY PORTIONS OF HGS EVIDENCE DEVOTED TO CATALOGUING PREDICTIONS IN THE PATENT APPLICATION

Cataloging by Dr. Mattick of statements, unsupported predictions, and other unsupported excerpts of the HGS application:

AJM1 3.25, 3.30-3.31 (Alleged uses of VEGF2 - no supporting data)

AJM1 3.32 and JSM-4 Table 1 (essentially a table of contents for application.)

AJM1 4.3 and 4.5-4.11 (overcoming signal sequence issue)

AJM1 4.18-4.24 (biological properties of VEGF2 and theoretical uses)

AJM1 4.30 and 4.39 (hybridization conditions and control thereof)

AJM1 4.67 (testing for activity)

AJM1 4.70 and 4.73 (gene therapy and treatments)

AJM1 4.77 (heterologous signal sequence usage)

AJM1 4.82-4.83 (antibody production)

AJM1 4.108 (antagonists)

Cataloging by Dr. Gamble of predictions and other unsupported excerpts of the HGS application:

AJG1 6.5 (prediction of processing)

AJG1 6.6 (expression systems)

AJG1 6.7 (activity assays)

AJG1 6.8 - 6.8.11 (list like Mattick)

AJG1 7.11 (assays for fragments, etc)

AJG1 7.15-7.18 (angiogenic assays)

AJG1 7.20 (generation of antibodies)

AJG1 7.24 (prediction of processing)

AJG1 7.35 (generation of fragments)

Cataloging by Dr. Hayward of predictions and other unsupported excerpts of the HGS application:

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-11

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-12

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

THE CLAIMS DEFINING THE INVENTION ARE AS FOLLOWS

1. An isolated polynucleotide comprising a polynucleotide sequence selected from the group consisting of:-

(a) a polynucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence as set forth in SEQ ID NO:2;

(b) a polynucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence as set forth in SEQ ID NO:4;

(c) a polynucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide comprising amino acid 39 to amino acid 233 of SEQ ID NO:2;

(d) a polynucleotide sequence having at least 70% identity to the polynucleotide sequence of (a), (b) or (c) and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(e) a polynucleotide sequence comprising at least 30 contiguous bases of the polynucleotide sequence of (a), (b), (c) or (d) and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(f) a polynucleotide sequence comprising at least 50 contiguous bases of the polynucleotide sequence of (a), (b), (c) or (d) and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(g) a polynucleotide sequence comprising a fragment of the polynucleotide sequence of (a), (b), (c) or (d), wherein said fragment encodes a polypeptide that retains TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(h) a polynucleotide sequence of (g) which encodes at least 30-50 amino acids of SEQ ID No's 2 or 4; and

(i) a polynucleotide sequence which is complementary to the polynucleotide sequence of (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g) or (h).

2. The polynucleotide of Claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide is DNA.

3. The polynucleotide of Claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide is RNA.

4. The polynucleotide of Claim 1 wherein the polynucleotide is genomic DNA.

5. The polynucleotide of Claim 2 which encodes a polypeptide comprising the amino acids of SEQ ID NO:2.

6. The polynucleotide of Claim 2 which encodes a polypeptide comprising amino acid 39 to 233 of SEQ ID NO:2.

7. The polynucleotide of Claim 2 which encodes a polypeptide comprising the amino acids of SEQ ID NO:4.

8. The polynucleotide of Claim 2 which encodes a polypeptide comprising the amino acids 1 to 188 of SEQ ID NO:4.

9. An isolated polynucleotide comprising a polynucleotide selected from the group consisting of:-

(a) a polynucleotide which encodes a mature polypeptide having the amino acid sequence expressed by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97377;

(b) a polynucleotide which encodes a mature polypeptide having the amino acid sequence expressed by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 97457;

(c) a polynucleotide sequence having at least 70% identity to the polynucleotide sequence of (a) or (b) and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(d) a polynucleotide sequence comprising at least 30 contiguous bases of the polynucleotide of (a), (b) or (c) and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(e) a polynucleotide sequence comprising at least 50 contiguous bases of the polynucleotide sequence of (a), (b) or (c) and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(f) a polynucleotide comprising a fragment of the polynucleotide of (a), (b) or (c), wherein said fragment encodes a polypeptide that retains TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(g) a polynucleotide sequence of (f) which encodes at least 30-50 amino acids of the polypeptide encoded by ATCC Deposit No's 97377 or 97457; and

(h) a polynucleotide which is complementary to the polynucleotide of (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f) or (g).

10. The polynucleotide of Claim 1 comprising from nucleotide 447 to nucleotide 1717 of SEQ ID NO:1.

11. The polynucleotide of Claim 1 comprising from nucleotide 332 to nucleotide 1717 of SEQ ID NO:1.

12. The polynucleotide of Claim 1 comprising from nucleotide 1 to nucleotide 564 of SEQ ID NO:3.

13. A vector comprising the DNA of Claim 2.

14. A host cell comprising the vector of Claim 13.

15. A process for producing a polypeptide comprising expressing from the host cell of Claim 14 the polypeptide encoded by the DNA in said vector.

16. A process for producing a cell comprising genetically engineering the cell with the vector of Claim 12 to thereby express the polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in the vector.

17. A polypeptide comprising a member selected from the group consisting of:-

(a) a polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as set forth in SEQ ID NO:2;

(b) a polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as set forth in SEQ ID NO:4;

(c) a polypeptide comprising amino acid residues 39 to 233 of SEQ ID NO:2;

(d) a polypeptide comprising amino acid residues 1 to 188 of SEQ ID NO:4;

(e) a polypeptide having at least a 70% identity to the polypeptide of (a), (b), (c) or (d) and having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity;

(f) a polypeptide comprising at least 30 contiguous amino acid residues of the polypeptide of (a), (b), (c), (d) or (e) and having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity.

18. The polypeptide of Claim 17 wherein the polypeptide comprises amino acid 1 to amino acid 233 of SEQ ID NO:2.

19. The polypeptide of Claim 17 wherein the polypeptide comprises amino acid 39 to amino acid 233 of SEQ ID NO:2.

20. The polypeptide of Claim 17 wherein the polypeptide comprises amino acid 1 to amino acid 188 of SEQ ID NO:4.

21. A compound which inhibits activation of the polypeptide of Claim 17.

22. A method for the treatment of a patient having need of TNF delta comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of the polypeptide of Claim 17.

23. A method for the treatment of a patient having need of TNF epsilon comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of the polypeptide of Claim 17.

24. A method of Claim 22 wherein said therapeutically effective amount of the polypeptide is administered by providing to the patient DNA encoding said polypeptide and expressing said polypeptide *in vivo*.

25. A method of Claim 23 wherein said therapeutically effective amount of the polypeptide is administered by providing to the patient DNA encoding said polypeptide and expressing said polypeptide *in vivo*.

26. A method for the treatment of a patient having need to inhibit a TNF delta polypeptide comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of Claim 21.

27. A method for the treatment of a patient having need to inhibit a TNF epsilon polypeptide comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of Claim 21.

28. A process for diagnosing a disease or a susceptibility to a disease related to an under-expression of the polypeptide of Claim 17 comprising determining a mutation in a nucleic acid sequence encoding said polypeptide.

29. A diagnosis process comprising analysing for the presence of the polypeptide of claim 17 in a sample derived from a host.

30. A method for identifying compounds which bind to and inhibit activation of the polypeptide of Claim 17 comprising:-

contacting a cell expressing on the surface thereof a receptor for the polypeptide, said receptor being associated with a second component capable of providing a detectable signal in response to the binding of a compound to said receptor, with an analytically detectable TNF delta polypeptide and a compound under conditions to permit binding to the receptor; and

determining whether the compound binds to and inhibits the receptor by detecting the absence of a signal generated from the interaction of the TNF delta with the receptor.

31. An isolated polynucleotide comprising a polynucleotide sequence having at least 90% identity to a member of the group (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g) or (h) in claim 1 and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity.

32. An isolated polynucleotide comprising a polynucleotide sequence having at least 95% identity to a member of the group (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g) or (h) in claim 1 and encoding a polypeptide having TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity.

33. An isolated polynucleotide comprising a polynucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide with TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity and which hybridises to the complement of the polynucleotide set forth in SEQ ID NO:1 wherein said hybridisation occurs under conditions comprising hybridisation in a buffer consisting of 7% SDS, 0.5 M $NaPO_4$ pH 7.4 at 65^0C and wash in a solution consisting of 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 60^0C.

34. An isolated polynucleotide comprising a polynucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide with TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity and which hybridises to

the complement of the polynucleotide set forth in SEQ ID NO:3 wherein said hybridisation occurs under conditions comprising hybridisation in a buffer consisting of 7% SDS, 0.5 M $NaPO_4$ pH 7.4 at 65^0C and wash in a solution consisting of 0.5 x SSC, 0.1% SDS at 60^0C.

35. The isolated polypeptide of Claim 17 wherein said polypeptide comprises an amino acid sequence having at least 90% identity to a member of said group (a), (b), (c), (d), (e) or (f) and retains TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity.

36. The isolated polypeptide of Claim 17 wherein said polypeptide comprises an amino acid sequence having at least 95% identity to a member of said group (a), (b), (c), (d), (e) or (f) and retains TNF-delta and/or TNF-epsilon activity.

37. An isolated polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 1 to 12 or a vector according to Claim 13 or a host cell according to Claim 14 or a process according to Claims 15 or 16 or a polypeptide according to any one of Claims 17 to 20 or a compound according to Claim 21 or a method according to any one of Claims 22 to 30 or a polynucleotide according to any one of Claims 31 to 34 or a polypeptide according to Claim 35 or 36 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-3

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

(12) PATENT
(19) AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE

(11) Application No. AU 199512547 B2
(10) Patent No. 708972

(54) Title
Tumor necrosis factor-gamma

(51)[6] International Patent Classification(s)

C07H 021/04	C12N 005/00
A61K 031/70	C12N 015/28
A61K 035/14	C12P 021/06
A61K 045/05	C12Q 001/68

(21) Application No: 199512547

(22) Application Date: 1994.11.07

(87) WIPO No: WO96/14328

(43) Publication Date : 1996.05.31
(43) Publication Journal Date : 1996.07.18
(44) Accepted Journal Date : 1999.08.19

(71) Applicant(s)
Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

(72) Inventor(s)
Guo-Liang Yu; Jian Ni; Craig A Rosen

(74) Agent/Attorney
DAVIES COLLISON CAVE,1 Little Collins Street,MELBOURNE VIC 3000

(56) Related Art
US 4677063

NUCLEIC ACIDS RESEARCH 13(17) 1985 PP.6361-6373

P.N.A.S. 86 1989 PP.10104-10107

OPI DATE 31/05/96 APPLN. ID 12547/95
AOJP DATE 18/07/96 PCT NUMBER PCT/US94/12880

AU9512547

(CT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 :
C07H 17/00, C12P 21/06, C07K 14/00, C12Q 1/68, A61K 31/70, 35/14, 45/05, C12N 5/00, 15/00

A1

(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/14328

(43) International Publication Date: 17 May 1996 (17.05.96)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US94/12880

(22) International Filing Date: 7 November 1994 (07.11.94)

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except US)*: HUMAN GENOME SCIENCES, INC. [US/US]; 9410 Key West Avenue, Rockville, MD 20850-3338 (US).

(72) Inventors; and
(75) Inventors/Applicants *(for US only)*: YU, Guo-Liang [CN/US]; 13524 Straw Bale Lane, Darnestown, MD 20878 (US). NI, Jian [CN/US]; Apartment 204, 305 Westside Drive, Gaithersburg, MD 20878 (US). ROSEN, Craig, A. [US/US]; 22400 Rolling Hill Road, Laytonsville, MD 20882 (US).

(74) Agents: OLSTEIN, Elliot, M. et al.; Carella, Byrne, Bain, Gilfillan, Cecchi, Stewart & Olstein, 6 Becker Farm Road, Roseland, NJ 07068 (US).

(81) Designated States: AU, CA, CN, JP, KR, NZ, US, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).

Published
With international search report.

(54) Title: TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR-GAMMA

(57) Abstract

A human TNF-gamma polypeptide and DNA (RNA) encoding such polypeptide and a procedure for producing such polypeptide by recombinant techniques is disclosed. Also disclosed are methods for utilizing such polypeptide to inhibit cellular growth, for example in a tumor or cancer, for facilitating wound-healing, to provide resistance against infection, induce inflammatory activities, and stimulating the growth of certain cell types to treat diseases, for example restenosis. Also disclosed are diagnostic methods for detecting a mutation in the TNF-gamma nucleic acid sequence or an overexpression of the TNF-gamma polypeptide. Antagonists against such polypeptides and their use as a therapeutic to treat cachexia, septic shock, cerebral malaria, inflammation, arthritis and graft-rejection are also disclosed.

THE CLAIMS DEFINING THE INVENTION ARE AS FOLLOWS:

1. An isolated polynucleotide which encodes a tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) polypeptide, wherein said polynucleotide comprises a nucleotide sequence selected from the group consisting of:

(a) a nucleotide sequence encoding amino acid residues -25 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2;

(b) a nucleotide sequence encoding the full-length polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927;

(c) a nucleotide sequence encoding amino acid residues 1 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2;

(d) a nucleotide sequence encoding the mature polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927;

(e) a homologue or analogue of any one of (a) to (d), wherein said homologue or analogue is at least 70% identical to any one of (a) to (d) and encodes a peptide or polypeptide having TNF-γ activity;

(f) a fragment of any one of (a) to (d), wherein said fragment comprises at least 30 contiguous nucleotides in length derived from any one of (a) to (d);

(h) a nucleotide sequence of at least 30 nucleotides in length that is capable of hybridizing to any one of (a) to (e) wherein said nucleotide sequence encodes TNF-γ or is derived from a nucleotide sequence that encodes TNF-γ; and

(i) a nucleotide sequence complementary to any one of (a) to (h).

2. The isolated polynucleotide of claim 1 wherein said nucleotide sequence encodes amino acid residues -25 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2.

3. The isolated polynucleotide of claim 1 wherein said nucleotide sequence encodes amino acid residues 1 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2;

4. The isolated polynucleotide of claim 1 wherein said nucleotide sequence encodes the full-length polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit

No. 75927.

5. The isolated polynucleotide of claim 1 wherein said nucleotide sequence encodes the mature polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927.

6. The isolated polynucleotide of claim 1 wherein the percentage identity to a homologue or analogue of any one of (a) to (d) is at least 95%.

7. The isolated polynucleotide of claim 1 wherein the fragment of any one of (a) to (d) comprises at least 50 contiguous nucleotides in length derived from any one of (a) to (d).

8. An isolated polynucleotide which encodes a tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) polypeptide, wherein said polynucleotide comprises the nucleotide sequence set forth as SEQ ID NO:1 or at least 30 contiguous nucleotide residues derived therefrom.

9. An isolated polynucleotide which encodes a tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) polypeptide, wherein said polynucleotide comprises a nucleotide sequence which is identical to the nucleotide sequence of the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927 or at least 30 contiguous nucleotide residues derived therefrom.

10. An isolated polynucleotide that comprises a nucleotide sequence that is complementary to the nucleotide sequence of the isolated polynucleotide according to claim 8.

11. An isolated polynucleotide that comprises a nucleotide sequence that is complementary to the nucleotide sequence of the isolated polynucleotide according to claim 9.

12. The isolated polynucleotide according to any one of claims 1 to 11 comprising DNA.

13. The isolated polynucleotide of claim 12 wherein the DNA is genomic DNA.

14. A vector comprising the isolated polynucleotide according to any one of claims 1 to 13.

15. A host cell transformed or transfected with the polynucleotide according to any one of claims 1 to 13 or the vector of claim 14.

16. The isolated polynucleotide according to any one of claims 1 to 13 in operable connection with a heterologous regulatory sequence which controls gene expression.

17. A method of producing a polynucleotide which encodes TNF-γ comprising hybridizing at least 30 contiguous nucleotides derived from SEQ ID NO:1 under stringent hybridization conditions with nucleic acid for a time and under conditions sufficient for hybridization to occur and then detecting said hybridization.

18. A method of producing a tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) polypeptide, said method comprising incubating or growing the host cell of claim 15 for a time and under conditions sufficient for expression of the polypeptide encoded by the introduced polynucleotide in said cell to occur.

19. A method of producing a cell capable of expressing a a tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) polypeptide, said method comprising transforming or transfecting a cell with the vector of claim 14.

20. A recombinant tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) polypeptide when produced by the method of claim 18.

21. An isolated or recombinant tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) polypeptide which comprises an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of:

(a) amino acid sequence shown as residues -25 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2;

(b) amino acid residues 1 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2;

(c) the amino acid sequence of the full-length polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927;

(d) the amino acid sequence of the mature polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927;

(e) the amino acid sequence of an analogue or derivative of any one of (a) to (d) wherein said analogue or derivative is at least 70% identical to any one of (a) to (d) and has tumor necrosis factor (TNF-γ) activity; and

(f) a fragment of any one of (a) to (d) that is encoded by at least 30 contiguous nucleotide residues present in SEQ ID NO:1 or the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927 or a degenerate nucleotide sequence thereto.

22. The isolated or recombinant polypeptide of claim 21 comprising amino acid residues -25 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2.

23. The isolated or recombinant polypeptide of claim 21 comprising amino acid residues 1 to 149 of SEQ ID NO:2.

24. The isolated or recombinant polypeptide of claim 21 comprising the amino acid sequence of the full-length polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927.

25. The isolated or recombinant polypeptide of claim 21 comprising the amino acid sequence of the mature polypeptide encoded by the human cDNA contained in ATCC Deposit No. 75927.

26. An antibody which binds specifically to the isolated or recombinant

polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25.

27. A compound which antagonises the activity of the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 or a naturally-occurring form of said polypeptide, wherein said compound was not known previously to antagonise the activity of said polypeptide.

28. A compound which agonises the activity of the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 or a naturally-occurring form of said polypeptide, wherein said compound was not known previously to agonise the activity of said polypeptide.

29. A method of treatment of a patient having need of human TNF-γ comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 or the compound of claim 28 or a composition comprising said polypeptide or said compound.

30. A method of treatment of a patient having need to inhibit human TNF-γ comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of the compound according to claim 27 or a composition comprising said compound.

31. A pharmaceutical composition comprising the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

32. The method of claim 29 wherein the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 or the composition comprising said polypeptide is administered by providing to the patient DNA encoding said polypeptide and expressing said polypeptide *in vivo*.

33. A method of identifying a modulator of human TNF-γ activity comprising:

(a) combining endothelial cells, Con A, [^{3}H]thymidine, and a compound to be tested for modulatory activity with the isolated or recombinant polypeptide according

to any one of claims 20 to 25 for a time and under conditions sufficient for human TNF-γ activity to stimulate [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation into said endothelial cells; and

(b) determining the level of [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation in (a) compared to the [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation obtained in the absence of said compound,

wherein a variation in [^{3}H]thymidine incorporation indicates that said compound is a modulator of TNF-γ activity.

34. The method of claim 33 wherein the modulator of human TNF-γ is an agonist of human TNF-γ activity.

35. The method of claim 33 wherein the modulator of human TNF-γ is an antagonist of human TNF-γ activity.

36. A compound which agonises the activity of human TNF-γ when identified by the method of claim 34, wherein said compound was not known previously to agonise TNF-γ activity.

37. A compound which antagonises the activity of human TNF-γ when identified by the method of claim 35, wherein said compound was not known previously to antagonise TNF-γ activity.

38. A method of diagnosing a disease in a subject or a susceptibility of a subject to a disease, wherein said disease is related to a mutation in the TNF-γ-encoding nucleotide sequences of said subject, and wherein said method comprises determining a mutation in a nucleotide sequence of said subject which encodes TNF-γ using the isolated polynucleotide according to any one of claims 1 to 13 or a chemically-synthesised oligonucleotide comprising an identical nucleotide sequence thereto or a vector comprising said nucleotide sequence.

39. The method according to claim 38 wherein the mutation is determined by comparing the nucleotide sequence of the subject which encodes TNF-γ with the nucleotide sequence of the nucleotide according to any one of claims 1 to 13, and wherein a difference between said nucleotide sequences is indicative of the mutation.

40. The method according to claim 38 or 39 when used to diagnose a tumor or a susceptibility to a tumor in a subject.

41. A method of diagnosing TNF-γ expression in a subject comprising analysing a sample derived from said subject for the presence of the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25.

42. The method according to claim 41 comprising contacting a biological sample derived from said subject with an antibody molecule capable of binding to the isolated or recombinant polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 for a time and under conditions sufficient for an antigen-antibody complex to form and then detecting said complex formed.

43. A method of inhibiting tumor cell growth in a subject comprising administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 or the pharmaceutical composition according to claim 31 for a time and under conditions sufficient for tumor growth to be inhibited.

44. Use of the polypeptide according to any one of claims 20 to 25 in the manufacture of a medicament to inhibit tumor cell growth , induce cell adhesion or promote endothelial cell growth in a human or animal subject.

45. Use of the isolated polynucleotide according to any one of claims 1 to 13 or the vector of claim 14 in the manufacture of a medicament to inhibit tumor cell growth , induce cell adhesion or promote endothelial cell growth in a human or animal subject.

46. The vector of claim 14 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

47. The host cell of claim 15 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

48. The method according to claim 18 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

49. The method according to claim 19 substantially as hereinbefore described with reference to the Figures and/or Examples.

DATED this TWENTY FOURTH day of JUNE, 1999
Human Genome Sciences, Inc.
by DAVIES COLLISON CAVE
Patent Attorneys for the Applicants

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-4

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

Antibodies

A LABORATORY MANUAL

Ed Harlow
Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory

David Lane
Imperial Cancer Research Fund Laboratories

Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory
1988

Antibodies
A LABORATORY MANUAL

Printed in the United States of America
Book and cover design by Emily Harste

Cover: "Nature Abstracted," watercolor by Carl Molno

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Antibodies : a laboratory manual / by Ed Harlow, David Lane.
p. cm.
Bibliography: p.
Includes index.
ISBN 0-87969-314-2 (paperback)
ISBN 0-87969-374-6 (cloth)

1. Immunoglobulins--Laboratory manuals. 2. Immunochemistry--Laboratory manuals. I. Harlow, Ed. II. Lane, David (David P.). 1952-
QR186.7.A53 1988
574.2'93'028--dc19

88-13983

All Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory publications may be ordered directly from Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Box 100, Cold Spring Harbor, New York 11724. Phone: 1-800-843-4388. In New York (516) 367-8423.

CONTENTS

Designing the Peptide

Probably the most frequently asked question concerning synthetic peptides is what sequence should be used for the immunogen (reviewed in Doolittle 1986). Although there is no one correct answer, enough anti-peptide antibodies have been raised to make suggestions for peptide choices. However, preparing anti-peptide antibodies is still an empirical exercise. What works well for one immunogen may fail completely for another.

Choosing the Appropriate Peptide Sequence

With careful synthesis, coupling, and immunizations, most sequences can be used to induce antibodies specific for the peptide itself. When considering which sequence to use, most people actually want to know how likely will it be that the anti-peptide antibodies will recognize the native protein. Early work suggested that peptides containing hydrophilic amino acids (Hopp and Woods 1981, 1983; Kyte and Doolittle 1982) and proline residues were more likely to be exposed on the surface of the native protein than other sequences, and many peptides have been prepared using these criteria. In assessing the value of these criteria, hydrophilicity is required but is not sufficient to predict the surface location of a particular sequence. Many strongly hydrophilic amino acid sequences are buried in water pockets or form inter- or intramolecular bonds and are thus excluded from interactions with anti-native antibodies. Therefore, hydrophilicity can be thought of as required but not sufficient for choosing peptide sequences (see p. 661 for hydrophilicity values). Hydrophilic peptides are also more likely to be soluble for coupling reactions.

The presence of proline residues in synthetic peptides originally was suggested because β-turns often form portions of known epitopes. However, the presence of proline residues in peptides does not have much predictive value when antisera are tested for binding to the surface of native proteins. Although many excellent anti-peptide antisera have been prepared against sequences with proline residues, there is not sufficient evidence to target prolines when designing peptides.

More recently, several workers have noted that carboxy-terminal sequences often are exposed and can be targeted for anti-peptide sequences. Although using carboxy-terminal sequences does not guarantee that the resulting antibodies will recognize the native protein, a surprisingly high percentage will. Similarly, many amino-terminal regions are exposed, and these also may make good targets.

Another potentially useful parameter for selecting peptide sequences is the "mobility" of the amino acid residues. Originally, it was noted that the regions of a protein that become epitopes often have a higher temperature than other regions, as determined by NMR and X-ray structure (Moore and Williams 1980; Robinson et al. 1983; Tainer et al. 1984; Westhof et al. 1984). Higher temperature in crystallography and NMR distinguishes regions that are more mobile from

regions that are more static. These observations have led to the suggestion that stretches of amino acids that are more flexible are more likely to be epitopes. In the preparation of anti-peptide antibodies, when a peptide is coupled to a carrier molecule, it has a different local environment than in the original protein. When choosing a sequence for antibody production, a region of the protein that is more flexible will be more likely over time to form a structure that is similar to the peptide–carrier conjugate. Although the measure of mobility may become a useful criterion for selecting good peptide sequences, it has not been tested in enough detail to determine whether it will have any predictive value.

At present, a reasonable order of suggestions for choosing peptide sequences would be:

1. If possible, use more than one peptide.
2. Use the carboxyl-terminal sequence if it is hydrophilic and if a suitable coupling group is available or can be added.
3. Use the amino-terminal sequence if it is hydrophilic and if a suitable coupling group is available or can be added.
4. Use internal hydrophilic regions; perhaps using longer peptides.

Size of the Peptide

The smallest synthetic peptides that will consistently elicit antibodies that bind to the original protein are 6 residues in length. Responses to smaller peptides are typically weak or will not recognize the protein of interest, either in a native or denatured state. Since epitopes consisting of smaller regions have been reported, the lower limit presumably reflects the difficulty of recognizing the smaller peptides coupled to carriers. With peptides of 6 amino acids or slightly larger, the responses vary. Some will generate good antibodies and some will not. Generally, peptides of approximately 10 residues should be used as a lower limit for coupling.

In the literature two strategies are suggested for peptide length. One school suggests using long peptides (up to 40 amino acids long) to increase the number of possible epitopes, while other authors argue that smaller peptides are adequate and their use ensures that the site-specific character of anti-peptide antibodies is retained. Both strategies have been used successfully. Two important preliminary questions to consider are: (1) Does the anti-peptide serum need to recognize the native protein? If so, use longer peptides or prepare anti-peptide antisera against multiple peptides. (2) How good is your peptide synthesis facility? Peptides over 20 residues in length are increasingly difficult to synthesize, yielding products with inappropriate side reactions. Longer peptides also are more likely to contain residues that make the coupling to carrier molecules more difficult. The correct decison between peptides with 10–15 residues and longer peptides will depend on the experimental design and will normally be a compromise between these factors. The safest choice, but also the most expensive, will be to prepare multiple small peptides of 10–15 amino acids in length from various regions of the sequence.

Coupling Strategy

When choosing the sequence for a synthetic peptide, one factor that often is overlooked is the method of coupling. Most coupling methods rely on the presence of free amino, sulfhydryl, phenolic, or carboxylic acid groups. Free amino groups used for coupling will be found on lysine side chains or on the amino-terminal residue. Sulfhydryl groups are found on cysteine side chains, phenolic groups on tyrosines, and carboxylic acid groups on aspartic acids, glutamic acids, and the carboxy-terminal residue. Coupling methods should be used that link the peptide to the carrier via either the carboxy- or amino-terminal residue. When preparing antibodies against the carboxy-terminal region of the protein, the coupling should be done through the amino terminus of the peptide. Similarly, the coupling for amino terminal fragments should be done through the carboxy-terminal region of the peptide. For internal fragments, the major consideration is that the peptide be coupled by an end and not through a central residue.

The easiest strategy to manipulate the type of coupling is to add an extra amino acid on either the amino or carboxyl terminus to allow simple, one-site coupling to the carrier. Any coupling method that potentially can bind to an internal residue should be avoided. Similarly, coupling methods should be chosen that will bind to only one amino acid, if possible. If multiple coupling sites are possible, they should be localized to either the amino or carboxyl terminus, and the coupling should be adjusted to link only through one site per peptide on average. It is important to remember that it is often easier to use different peptides than design elaborate coupling schemes.

Choosing the Appropriate Carrier

Many different carrier proteins can be used for coupling with synthetic peptides. The two most commonly used are keyhole limpet hemacyanin (KLH) and bovine serum albumin (BSA). Both work well in most cases, but each has disadvantages. Because of its large size, KLH is more likely to precipitate during cross-linking, and this can make handling KLH difficult in some cases. On the other hand, BSA is very soluble, but often is a good immunogen in its own right. For most purposes, either carrier will be adequate. Use whichever is more convenient.

Three other carriers that are used occasionally are ovalbumin, mouse serum albumin, or rabbit serum albumin. Ovalbumin can be used as a good carrier for most purposes. It is also a good choice for a second carrier when checking that antibodies are specific for the peptide itself and not the carrier. MSA or RSA may be used when the antibody response to the carrier molecule must be kept to a minimum.

BSA has 59 lysine (30–35 are available for coupling), 19 tyrosine, 35 cysteine, 39 aspartic acid, and 59 glutamic acid residues. Ovalbumin has 20 lysine, 10 tyrosine, 6 cysteine, 14 aspartic acid, and 33 glutamic acid residues.

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-5

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

From genes to protein structure and function: novel applications of computational approaches in the genomic era

Jeffrey Skolnick and Jacquelyn S. Fetrow

The genome-sequencing projects are providing a detailed 'parts list' of life. A key to comprehending this list is understanding the function of each gene and each protein at various levels. Sequence-based methods for function prediction are inadequate because of the multifunctional nature of proteins. However, just knowing the structure of the protein is also insufficient for prediction of multiple functional sites. Structural descriptors for protein functional sites are crucial for unlocking the secrets in both the sequence and structural-genomics projects.

Genome-sequencing projects are providing a detailed 'parts list' for life. Unfortunately, this list, a portion of which represents the amino acid sequence of all the proteins in a given genome, does not come with an instruction manual. That is, given the genome's sequences, one does not necessarily know straight away which regions encode proteins, which serve a regulatory role and which are responsible for the structure and replication of the DNA itself.

This is not unlike giving a child a list of parts necessary to create a working automobile. Without the necessary expertise, creating the final, working car from just the initial parts list is a nearly impossible task. Similarly, understanding how to create a complete, functioning cell given just the sequence of nucleotides found in an organism's genome is a complex problem.

What is a protein function?

After a genome is sequenced and its complete parts list determined, the next goal is to understand the function(s) of each part, including that of the proteins. What do we mean by protein function, the focus of this article?

Function has many meanings. At one level, the protein could be a globular protein, such as an enzyme, hormone or antibody, or it could be a structural or membrane-bound protein. Another level is its biochemical function, such as the chemical reaction and the substrate specificity of an enzyme. The regulatory molecules or cofactors that bind to a protein are also levels of biochemical function.

At the cellular level, the protein's function would involve its interaction with other macromolecules and the function and cellular location of such complexes. There is also the protein's physiological function; that is, in which metabolic pathway the protein is involved or what physiological role it performs in the organism. Finally, the phenotypic function is the role played by the protein in the total organism, which is observed by deleting or mutating the gene encoding the protein.

J. Skolnick (skolnick@danforthcenter.org) is at the Danforth Plant Science Center, Laboratory of Computational Genomics, 4041 Forest Park Avenue, St Louis, MO 63108, USA. J.S. Fetrow is at GeneFormatics, Suite 200, 5330 Oberlin Drive, San Diego, CA 92121-3754, USA.

Obviously, the complete characterization of protein function is difficult but efforts are under way at all levels[1–4], including cellular function[5,6]. In this article, however, we focus on identifying the biochemical function of a protein given its sequence, a problem that is amenable to molecular approaches.

Sequence-based approaches to function prediction

The sequence-to-function approach is the most commonly used function-prediction method. This robust field is well developed and, in the interest of space limitations, we will merely present a brief overview.

There are two main flavors of this approach: sequence alignment[7–9]; and sequence-motif methods such as Prosite[10], Blocks[11], Prints[12,13] and Emotif[14]. Both the alignment and the motif methods are powerful but a recent analysis has demonstrated their significant limitations[15], suggesting that these methods will increasingly fail as the protein-sequence databases become more diverse.

An extension of these approaches that combines protein-sequence with structural information has been developed and some successes have been reported[16]. However, this method still applies the structural information in a one-dimensional, 'sequence-like' fashion and fails to take into account the powerful three-dimensional information displayed by protein structures.

In addition, proteins can gain and lose function during evolution and may, indeed, have multiple functions in the cell (Box 1). Sequence-to-function methods cannot specifically identify these complexities. Inaccurate use of sequence-to-function methods has led to significant function-annotation errors in the sequence databases[17].

An alternative approach

An alternative, complementary approach to protein-function prediction uses the sequence-to-structure-to-function paradigm. Here, the goal is to determine the structure of the protein of interest and then to identify the functionally important residues in that structure. Using the chemical structure itself to identify functional sites is more in line with how the protein actually works.

0167-7799/00/$ - see front matter PII: S0167-7799(99)01398-0

In a sense, this is one long-term goal of 'structural genomics' projects[18,19], which are designed to determine all possible protein folds experimentally, just as genome-sequencing projects are determining all protein sequences[20]. This is in contrast to traditional structural-biology approaches, in which one knows the protein's function first and only then, if the function is sufficiently important, determines its structure.

It is implicitly assumed that having the protein's structure will provide insights into its function, thereby furthering the goals of the human-genome-sequencing project. However, knowing a protein's three-dimensional structure is insufficient to determine its function (Box 2). What we really need to analyse and predict the multifunctional aspects of proteins is a method specifically to recognize active sites and binding regions in these protein structures.

Active-site identification

In order to use a structure-based approach to function prediction, one must identify the key residues responsible for a given biochemical activity. For many years, it has been suggested that the active sites in proteins are better conserved than the overall fold. Taken to the limit, this suggests that one could not only identify distant ancestors with the same global fold and the same activity but also proteins with similar functions but distantly related, or possibly unrelated, global folds.

The validity of this suggestion was demonstrated empirically by Nussinov and co-workers, who showed that the active sites of eukaryotic serine proteases, subtilisins and sulfhydryl proteases exhibit similar structural motifs[21]. Furthermore, in a recent modeling study of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* proteins, protein functional sites were found to be more conserved than other parts of the protein models[22]. Similarly, it has been demonstrated that the catalytic triad of the α/β hydrolases is structurally better conserved than other histidine-containing triads[23]. A comparison of the structure of the hydrolase catalytic triad to other histidine-containing triads shows a distinct bimodal distribution, while a similar analysis done with a randomly selected triad shows a unimodal distribution (Fig. 1).

Kasuya and Thornton[24] generalized this example by creating structural analogs of a few Prosite sequence motifs[10]. For the 20 most-frequently occurring Prosite patterns, the associated local structure is quite distinct. These results provide clear evidence that enzyme active sites are indeed more highly conserved than other parts of the protein.

Identifying active sites in experimental structures

Historically, several groups have attempted to identify functional sites in proteins; these efforts were directed at protein engineering or building functional sites in places where they did not previously exist. This has been successfully accomplished for several metal-binding sites[25–33]. However, highly accurate functional-site descriptors of the backbone and side-chain atoms were required, fueling the belief that significant atomic detail is required in site descriptors for function identification.

Highly detailed residue side-chain descriptors of the active sites of serine proteases and related proteins have been used to identify functional sites[3]. The use of these highly detailed motifs has led to the identification of several novel functional sites in known, high-quality protein structures[3,34]. More automated methods for finding spatial motifs in protein structures have also been described[21,34–40].

Unfortunately, most of these methods require the exact placement of atoms within protein backbones and side chains, and so have not been shown to be relevant to inexact predicted structures. Recently, however, we described the production of fuzzy, inexact descriptors of protein functional sites[15]. As we wish to apply the descriptors to experimental structures as well as to predicted protein models, we used only carbon atoms and side-chain centers-of-mass positions. We call these descriptors 'fuzzy functional forms' (FFFs) and have created them for both the disulfide-oxidoreductase[15,41] and α/β-hydrolase catalytic active sites[23].

The disulfide-oxidoreductase FFF was applied to screen high-resolution structures from the Brookhaven protein database[42]. In a dataset of 364 protein structures, the FFF accurately identified all proteins known to exhibit the disulfide-oxidoreductase active site[15]. In a larger dataset of 1501 proteins, the FFF again accurately identified all proteins with the active site. In addition, it identified another protein, 1fjm, a serine–threonine phosphatase. This result was initially discouraging but subsequent sequence alignment and clustering analysis strongly suggested that this putative site might indeed be a site of redox regulation in the serine–threonine phosphatase-1 subfamily[43]. If confirmed by experiment, this result will highlight the advantages of using structural descriptors to analyse multiple functional sites in proteins. It will also highlight the fact that human

Box 1. Proteins are multifunctional

A common protein characteristic that makes functional analysis based only on homology especially difficult is the tendency of proteins to be multifunctional. For instance, lactate dehydrogenase binds NAD, substrate and zinc, and performs a redox reaction. Each of these occurs at different functional sites that are in close proximity and the combination of all four sites creates the fully functional protein.

Other examples of multifunctional proteins are the nucleic-acid-binding proteins. For instance, DNA regulatory proteins often contain a DNA-binding domain, a multimerization domain and additional sites that bind regulatory proteins; a classic example is RecA[59]. The 3C rhinovirus protease exhibits a proteolytic function as well as an RNA-binding function[60,61]. Transcription factors are also complex, multifunctional proteins[62]. It is becoming increasingly important to recognize each of these different functions of gene products of a newly sequenced gene.

The serine–threonine-phosphatase superfamily is a prime example of the difficulties of using standard sequence analysis to recognize the multiple functions found in single proteins. This large protein family is divided into a number of subfamilies, all of which contain an essential phosphatase active site. Subfamilies 1, 2A and 2B exhibit 40% or more sequence identity between them[63]. However, each of these subfamilies is apparently regulated differently in the cell[64–67] and observation suggests that there are different functional sites at which regulation can occur. Because the sequence identity between subfamilies is so high, standard sequence-similarity methods could easily misclassify new sequences as members of the wrong subfamily if the functional sites are not carefully considered, as was recently demonstrated[43].

These are but a few examples of the multifunctionality of proteins. The recognition of this multifunctional nature is of critical importance to the genomics field. Useful functional-annotation methods must consider all of the specific functions in a given protein and will not just provide a general classification of function.

Box 2. Knowing a protein's structure does not necessarily tell you its function

Because proteins can have similar folds but different functions[68,69], determining the structure of a protein may or may not tell you something about its function. The most well-studied example is the $(\alpha/\beta)_8$ barrel enzymes, of which triose-phosphate isomerase (TIM) is the archetypal representative. Members of this family have similar overall structures but different functions, including different active sites, substrate specificities and cofactor requirements[70,71].

Is this example common? Our own analysis of the 1997 SCOP database[68] shows that the five largest fold families are the ferredoxin-like, the (α/β) barrels, the knottins, the immunoglobulin-like and the flavodoxin-like fold families with 22, 18, 13, 9 and 9 subfamilies, respectively (Fig. i). In fact, 57 of the SCOP fold families consist of multiple superfamilies. These data only show the tip of the iceberg, because each superfamily is further composed of protein families and each individual family can have radically different functions. For example, the ferredoxin-like superfamily contains families identified as Fe–S ferredoxins, ribosomal proteins, DNA-binding proteins and phosphatases, among others.

After this article was submitted, a much-more-detailed analysis of the SCOP database was published[72]. This finds a broad function–structure correlation for some structural classes, but also finds a number of ubiquitous functions and structures that occur across a number of families. The article provides a useful analysis of the confidence with which structure and function can be correlated[72]. Knowing the protein structure by itself is insufficient to annotate a number of functional classes and is also insufficient for annotating the specific details of protein function.

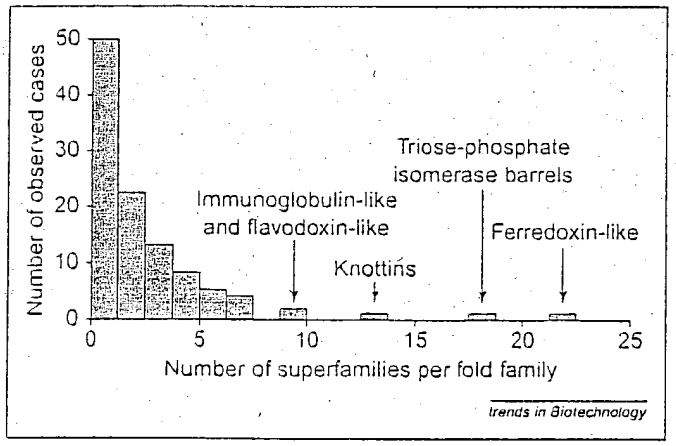


Figure i

Histogram of the numbers of superfamilies found in each SCOP fold family. These data clearly show that proteins with similar structures can have different functions and demonstrate the difficulty of assigning protein function based simply on the three-dimensional structure. The data were taken from the 1997 distribution of SCOP (http://scop.mrc-lmb.cam.ac.uk/scop). For a more-detailed analysis, see Ref. 72.

observation alone is no longer adequate for identifying all functional sites in known protein structures.

To date, the use of structure to identify function has largely focused on high-resolution structures and highly detailed descriptors of protein functional sites. However, the creation of inexact descriptors for functional sites opens the way to the application of these methods to inexact, predicted protein models. The question remains: how good does a model have to be in order to use FFFs to identify its active sites?

The state of the art in structure-prediction methods

For proteins whose sequence identity is above ~30%, one can use homology modeling to build the structure[44]. However, structure prediction is far more difficult for proteins that are not homologous to proteins with known structure. At present, there are two approaches for these sequences: *ab initio* folding[45–48] and threading[49–53].

In *ab initio* folding, one starts from a random conformation and then attempts to assemble the native structure. As this method does not rely on a library of pre-existing folds, it can be used to predict novel folds. The recent CASP3 protein-structure-prediction experiment (http://PredictionCenter.llnl.gov/CASP3) involved the blind prediction of the structure of proteins whose actual structure was about to be experimentally determined. These results indicate that considerable progress has been made[46,54]. For helical and α/β proteins with less than 110 residues, structures were often predicted whose backbone root-mean-square deviation (RMSD) from native ranged from 4–7 Å. Progress is being made with the β proteins, too, although they remain problematic. Because *ab initio* methods can identify novel folds, these methods could be used to help to select sequences likely to yield novel folds in experimental structural-genomics projects.

Another approach to tertiary-structure prediction is threading. Here, for the sequence of interest, one attempts to find the closest matching structure in a library of known folds[52,55]. Threading is applicable to proteins of up to 500 residues or so and is much faster than *ab initio* approaches. However, threading cannot be used to obtain novel folds.

Ab initio *predicted models can be used for automatic protein-function prediction*

The results of the recent CASP3 competition suggest that current modeling methods can often (but not always) create inexact protein models. Are these structures useful for identifying functional sites in proteins? Using the *ab initio* structure-prediction program MONSSTER, the tertiary structure of a glutaredoxin, 1ego, was predicted[56]. For the lowest-energy model, the overall backbone RMSD from the crystal structure was 5.7 Å.

To determine whether this inexact model could be used for function identification, the sets of correctly and incorrectly folded structures were screened with the FFF for disulfide-oxidoreductase activity[15]. The FFF uniquely identified the active site in the correctly folded structure but not in the incorrectly folded ones (Fig. 2). This is a proof-of-principle demonstration that inexact models produced by *ab initio* prediction of structure from sequence can be used for the subsequent prediction of biochemical function. Of course, improvements in the method have to be made before such predictions can be done on a routine basis.

Use of predicted structures from threading in protein-function prediction

At present, practical limitations preclude folding an entire genome of proteins using *ab initio* methods[57]. Threading is more appropriate for achieving the requisite high-throughput structure prediction. Thus, a standard threading algorithm[58] has been used to screen all

proteins in nine genomes for the disulfide-oxidoreductase active site described above.

First, sequences that aligned with the structures of known disulfide oxidoreductases were identified. Then, the structure was searched for matches to the active-site residues and geometry. For those sequences for which other homologs were available, a sequence-conservation profile was constructed[23]. If the putative active-site residues were not conserved in the sequence subfamily to which the protein belongs, that sequence was eliminated. Otherwise, the sequence is predicted to have the function.

Using this sequence-to-structure-to-function method, 99% of the proteins in the nine genomes that have known disulfide-oxidoreductase activity have been found. From 10% to 30% more functional predictions are made than by alternative sequence-based approaches; similar results are seen for the α/β hydrolases[23]. Surprisingly, in spite of the fact that threading algorithms have problems generating good sequence-to-structure alignments, active sites are often accurately aligned, even for very distant matches. This observation would agree with the above experimental results indicating that active sites are well conserved in protein structures.

Importantly, the false-positive rate when using structural information is much lower than that found using sequence-based approaches, as demonstrated by a detailed comparison of the FFF structural approach and the Blocks sequence-motif approach (N. Siew *et al.*, unpublished). In this study, the sequences in eight genomes, including *Bacillus subtilis*, were analysed for disulfide-oxidoreductase function using the disulfide-oxidoreductase FFF, the thioredoxin Block 00194 and the glutaredoxin Block 00195. If we assume that those sequences identified by both the FFF and Blocks are 'true positives', we find 13 such sequences in the *B. subtilis* genome.

There is no experimental evidence validating all of these 'true positives' and so they are more accurately termed 'consensus positives'. In order to find these 13 'consensus positive' sequences, the FFF hits seven false positives. On the other hand, Blocks hits 23 false positives (Fig. 3). It was previously suggested that the use of a functional requirement adds information to threading and reduces the number of false positives[52]. These data, including the data shown in Fig. 3, validate this claim on a genome-wide basis.

Of course, as no genome has had the function of all of its proteins experimentally annotated, it is impossible to know how many other proteins with the specified biochemical function were not properly identified. This is a critical question for researchers attempting to predict protein function. Experimental confirmation will be needed to validate this or any other method fully. This points out the need for closely coupling computational function-prediction algorithms with experiments.

Weaknesses of using the sequence-to-structure-to-function method of function prediction

Based on studies to date, the identification of enzymatic activity requires a model in which the backbone RMSD from native near the active sites is about 4–5 Å. Predicted models are better at describing the geometry in the core of the molecule than in the loops and so predicting the function of a protein whose active site is in loops may be a problem. Also, the method can currently only be applied to enzyme active sites; substrate- and ligand-binding sites have not been identified using the inexact models. Techniques that will further refine inexact protein models will be quite useful in taking the protein analysis to the next step.

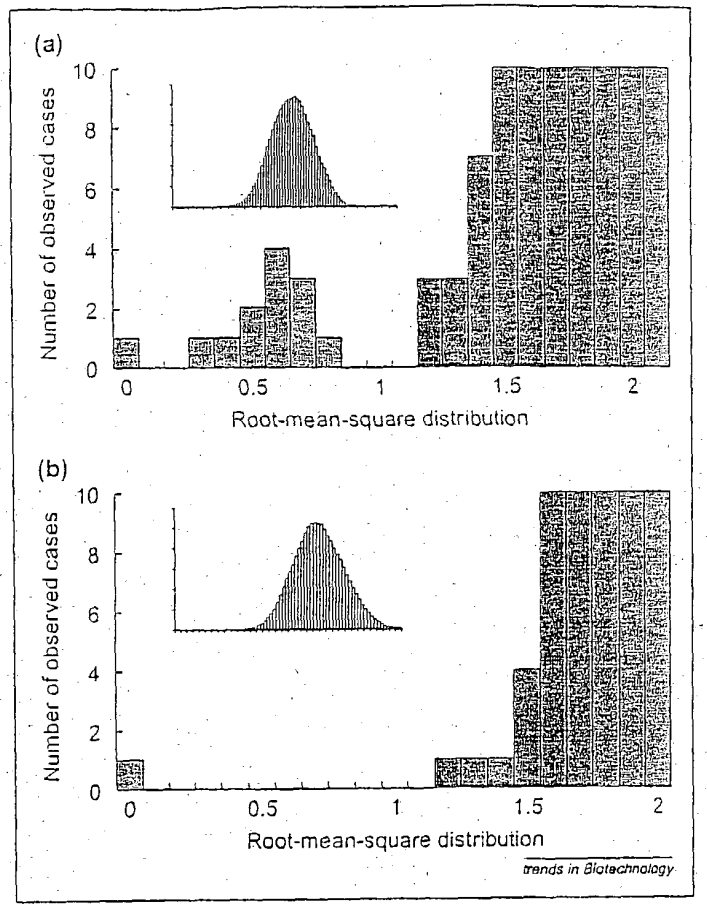


Figure 1

The distribution of root-mean-square distributions (RMSD) between the hydrolase catalytic triad and all other histidine-containing triads shows a bimodal distribution (**a**); by contrast, the RMSD between a randomly selected (non-catalytic) triad and all other histidine-containing triads has a unimodal distribution (**b**). The His–Ser–Asp catalytic trial in the protein-1 gpl (Rp2 lipase) (**a**) and a random histidine-containing triad from 4pga (glutaminase–asparaginase) (**b**) were structurally aligned to all His-containing triads in a database of 1037 proteins[23]. Actual α/β-hydrolase active sites (**a**) and the 4pga site (**b**) are indicated by blue bars; other histidine triads that are not active sites are indicated by red bars. None of the sites found by matching to the 4pga were hydrolase active sites. Inset graphs show the full distribution.

Conclusions

Although sequence-based approaches to protein-function prediction have proved to be very useful, alternatives are needed to assign the biochemical function of the 30–50% of proteins whose function cannot be assigned by any current methods. One emerging approach involves the sequence-to-structure-to-function paradigm. Such structures might be provided by structural-genomics projects or by structure-prediction algorithms. Functional assignment is made by screening the resulting structure against a library of structural descriptors for known active sites or binding regions.

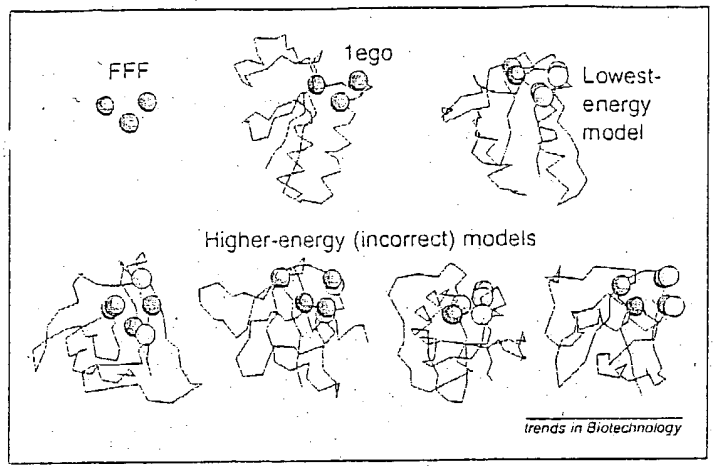


Figure 2

Application of the disulfide-oxidoreductase fuzzy functional form (FFF) to *ab initio* models of glutaredoxin created by the program MONSSTER shows that the FFF can distinguish between correctly folded and misfolded (or higher-energy) models. The FFF is shown as two orange balls (representing the cysteines) and a blue ball (representing the proline). The protein models are shown as magenta wire models with the active-site cysteines and proline shown as yellow and cyan balls, respectively. The FFF clearly distinguishes the correct active site in the crystal structure of the glutaredoxin 1ego and the correctly folded, lowest-energy model. The FFF does not match to the active sites of any of the higher energy, misfolded structures, four of which are shown here.

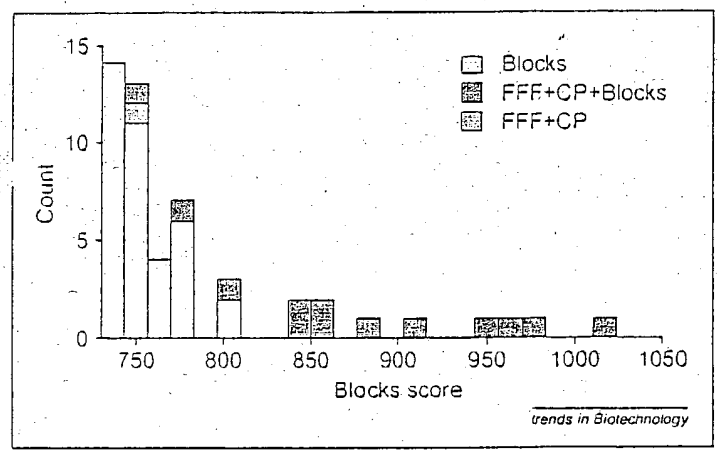


Figure 3

Analysis of the *Bacillus subtilis* genome using the thioredoxin Block 00194. The Blocks score (computed using the publicly available BLIMPS program) is plotted on the *x* axis and the number of sequences found in each scoring bin is plotted on the *y* axis. Those sequences identified as 'consensus positives' (identified by both the fuzzy functional form (FFF) and the Block) are shown as red bars. One additional sequence found by the FFF, which is likely to be a true positive, is shown as a blue bar. All other sequences, putative 'false positives', are shown as yellow bars. Using the Blocks score at which all 13 of the 'consensus positives' are found, 23 false positives are also found. In its analysis of the *B. subtilis* genome, the FFF identifies only seven false positives along with the same 13 'consensus positives' (data not shown).

Detailed descriptors will only work on the experimentally determined, high-quality structures. Ideally, however, the descriptors should work on both experimental structures and the cruder models provided by tertiary-structure-prediction algorithms.

The advantages of such an approach are that one need not establish an evolutionary relationship in order to assign function, that more than one function can be assigned to a given protein [an issue of major importance, because proteins are multifunctional (Box 1)] and, ultimately, that having a structure can provide deeper insight into the biological mechanism of protein function and regulation. The disadvantages are that one needs to have the protein's structure before a function can be assigned and that the approach is limited to those functions associated with proteins with at least one solved structure, so that a functional-site descriptor can be constructed.

In this sense, structure-to-function assignment can be thought of as 'functional threading' – find the active-site match in a library of descriptors for known protein active sites. This is the first step in the long process of using structure to assign all levels of function, a goal that is made increasingly important with the emergence of structural genomics. Based on the progress to date, it is apparent that structure will play an important role in the post-genomic era of biology.

Acknowledgment

We thank L. Zhang for producing the data in Box 2 and Fig. 1.

References

1 Gurd, F.R.N. and Rothgeb, T.M. (1979) Motions in proteins. *Adv. Protein Chem.* 33, 73–165
2 Laskowski, R.A. *et al.* (1996) X-SITE: use of empirically derived atomic packing preferences to identify favourable interaction regions in the binding sites of proteins. *J. Mol. Biol.* 259, 175–201
3 Wallace, A.C. *et al.* (1996) Derivation of 3D coordinate templates for searching structural databases: application to Ser–His–Asp catalytic triads in the serine proteinases and lipases. *Protein Sci.* 5, 1001–1013
4 Henikoff, S. and Henikoff, J.G. (1991) Automated assembly of protein blocks for database searching. *Nucleic Acids Res.* 19, 6565–6572
5 Riley, M. (1993) Functions of gene products of *Escherichia coli*. *Microbiol. Rev.* 57, 862–952
6 Karp, P.D. and Riley, M. (1993) Representations of metabolic knowledge. *Ismb* 1, 207–215
7 Altschul, S.F. *et al.* (1990) Basic local alignment search tool. *J. Mol. Biol.* 215, 403–410
8 Pearson, W.R. (1996) Effective protein sequence comparison. *Methods Enzymol.* 266, 227–258
9 Sturrock, S.S. and Collins, J.F. (1993) *Biocomputing Research Unit*. University of Edinburgh, Edinburgh, UK
10 Bairoch, A. *et al.* (1995) The PROSITE database, its status in 1995. *Nucleic Acids Res.* 24, 189–196
11 Henikoff, S. and Henikoff, J.G. (1994) Protein family classification based on searching a database of blocks. *Genomics* 19, 97–107
12 Attwood, T.K. *et al.* (1994) PRINTS – A database of protein motif fingerprints. *Nucleic Acids Res.* 22, 3590–3596
13 Attwood, T.K. *et al.* (1997) Novel developments with the PRINTS protein fingerprint database. *Nucleic Acids Res.* 25, 212–216
14 Nevill-Manning, C.G. *et al.* (1998) Highly specific protein sequence motifs for genome analysis. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 95, 5865–5871
15 Fetrow, J.S. and Skolnick, J. (1998) Method for prediction of protein function from sequence using the sequence-to-structure-to-function paradigm with application to glutaredoxins/thioredoxins and T1 ribonucleases. *J. Mol. Biol.* 281, 949–968
16 Yu, L. *et al.* (1998) A homology identification method that combines protein sequence and structure information. *Protein Sci.* 7, 2499–2510
17 Bork, P. and Bairoch, A. (1996) Go hunting in sequence databases but watch out for traps. *Trends Genet.* 12, 425–427
18 Gaasterland, T. (1998) Structural genomics: bioinformatics in the driver's seat. *Nat. Biotechnol.* 16, 625–627
19 McKusick, V.A. (1997) Genomics: structural and functional studies of genomes. *Genomics* 45, 244–249
20 Montelione, G.T. and Anderson, S. (1999) Structural genomics: keystone for a human proteome project. *Nat. Struct. Biol.* 6, 11–12

21 Fischer, D. *et al.* (1994) Three-dimensional, sequence order-independent structural comparison of a serine protease against the crystallographic database reveals active site similarities: potential implications to evolution and to protein folding. *Protein Sci.* 3, 769–778

22 Sanchez, R. and Sali, A. (1998) Large-scale protein structure modeling of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* genome. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 95, 13597–13602

23 Zhang, L. *et al.* (1998) Functional analysis of *E. coli* proteins for members of the α/β hydrolase family. *Fold. Design* 3, 535–548

24 Kasuya, A. and Thornton, J.M. (1999) Three-dimensional structure analysis of Prosite patterns. *J. Mol. Biol.* 286, 1673–1691

25 Coldren, C.D. *et al.* (1997) The rational design and construction of a cuboidal iron–sulfur protein. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 94, 6635–6640

26 Pinto, A.L. *et al.* (1997) Construction of a catalytically active iron superoxide dismutase by rational protein design. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 94, 5562–5567

27 Hellinga, H.W. and Richards, F.M. (1991) Construction of new ligand binding sites in proteins of known structure: (I) computer-aided modeling of sites with pre-defined geometry. *J. Mol. Biol.* 222, 763–785

28 Hellinga, H.W. *et al.* (1991) Construction of new ligand binding sites in proteins of known structure: (II) grafting of a buried transition metal binding site into *Escherichia coli* thioredoxin. *J. Mol. Biol.* 222, 787–803

29 Klemba, M. and Regan, L. (1995) Characterization of metal binding by a designed protein: single ligand substitutions at a tetrahedral Cys_2His_2 site. *Biochemistry* 34, 10094–10100

30 Klemba, M. *et al.* (1995) Novel metal-binding proteins by design. *Nat. Struct. Biol.* 2, 368–373

31 Farinas, E. and Regan, L. (1998) The *de novo* design of a rubredoxin-like Fe site. *Protein Sci.* 7, 1939–1946

32 Crowder, M.W. *et al.* (1995) Spectroscopic studies on the designed metal-binding sites of the 43C9 single chain antibody. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117, 5627–5634

33 Halfon, S. and Craik, C.S. (1996) Regulation of proteolytic activity by engineered tridentate metal binding loops. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 118, 1227–1228

34 Wallace, A.C. *et al.* (1997) TESS: A geometric hashing algorithm for deriving 3D coordinate templates for searching structural databases: application to enzyme active sites. *Protein Sci.* 6, 2308–2323

35 Kleywegt, G.J. (1999) Recognition of spatial motifs in protein structures. *J. Mol. Biol.* 285, 1887–1897

36 Matsuo, Y. and Nishikawa, K. (1994) Protein structural similarities predicted by a sequence-structure compatibility method. *Protein Sci.* 3, 2055–2063

37 Russell, R.B. (1998) Detection of protein three-dimensional side-chain patterns: new examples of convergent evolution. *J. Mol. Biol.* 279, 1211–1227

38 Han, K.F. *et al.* (1997) Three-dimensional structures and contexts associated with recurrent amino acid sequence patterns. *Protein Sci.* 6, 1587–1590

39 Artymiuk, P.J. *et al.* (1994) A graph-theoretic approach to the identification of three-dimensional patterns of amino acid side-chains in protein structures. *J. Mol. Biol.* 236, 327–344

40 Karlin, S. and Zhu, Z.Y. (1996) Characterizations of diverse residue clusters in protein three-dimensional structures. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 93, 8344–8349

41 Fetrow, J.S. *et al.* (1998) Functional analysis of the *Escherichia coli* genome using the sequence-to-structure-to-function paradigm: identification of proteins exhibiting the glutaredoxin/thioredoxin disulfide oxidoreductase activity. *J. Mol. Biol.* 282, 703–711

42 Abola, E.E. *et al.* (1987) *Protein Data Bank in Crystallographic Databases: Information Content, Software Systems, Scientific Application* (Allen, F.H. *et al.*, eds), Data Commission of the International Union of Crystallography, Bonn/Cambridge/Chester

43 Fetrow, J.S. *et al.* (1999) Structure-based functional motif identifies a potential disulfide oxidoreductase active site in the serine/threonine protein phosphatase-1 subfamily. *FASEB J.* 13, 1866–1874

44 Sali, A. *et al.* (1995) Evaluation of comparative protein modeling by MODELLER. *Proteins* 23, 318–326

45 Bystroff, C. and Baker, D. (1998) Prediction of local structure in proteins using a library of sequence-structure motifs. *J. Mol. Biol.* 281, 565–577

46 Shortle, D. (1999) The state of the art. *Curr. Biol.* 9, R205–R209

47 Lee, J. *et al.* (1999) Calculation of protein conformation by global optimization of a potential energy function. *Proteins* 3 (Suppl.), 204–208

48 Ortiz, A. *et al.* (1999) *Ab initio* folding of proteins using restraints derived from evolutionary information. *Proteins* 3 (Suppl.), 177–185

49 Bowie, J.U. *et al.* (1991) A method to identify protein sequences that fold into a known three-dimensional structure. *Science* 253, 164–170

50 Finkelstein, A.V. and Reva, B.A. (1991) A search for the most stable folds of protein chains. *Nature* 351, 497–499

51 Bryant, S.H. and Lawrence, C.E. (1993) An empirical energy function for threading protein sequence through folding motif. *Proteins* 16, 92–112

52 Lathrop, R. and Smith, T.F. (1996) Global optimum protein threading with gapped alignment and empirical pair scoring function. *J. Mol. Biol.* 255, 641–665

53 Jones, D.T. *et al* (1992). A new approach to protein fold recognition. *Nature* 358, 86–89

54 Sternberg, M.J. *et al.* (1999) Progress in protein structure prediction: assessment of CASP3. *Curr. Opin. Struct. Biol.* 9, 368–373

55 Miller, R.T. *et al.* (1996) Protein fold recognition by sequence threading tools and assessment techniques. *FASEB J.* 10, 171–178

56 Ortiz, A.R. *et al.* (1998) Fold assembly of small proteins using Monte Carlo simulations driven by restraints derived from multiple sequence alignments. *J. Mol. Biol.* 277, 419–448

57 Skolnick, J. *et al.* (1998) Reduced protein models and their application to the protein folding problem. *J. Biomol. Struct. Dyn.* 16, 381–396

58 Jaroszewski, L. *et al.* (1998) Fold prediction by a hierarchy of sequence, threading and modeling methods. *Protein Sci.* 7, 1431–1440

59 Takahashi, M. *et al.* (1996) Locations of functional domains in the RecA protein: overlap of domains and regulation of activities. *Eur. J. Biochem.* 242, 20–28

60 Leong, L.E. *et al.* (1993) Human rhinovirus-14 protease 3C (3Cpro) binds specifically to the 5′ noncoding region of the viral RNA: evidence that 3Cpro has different domains for the RNA binding and proteolytic activities. *J. Biol. Chem.* 268, 25735–25739

61 Matthews, D.A. *et al.* (1994) Structure of human rhinovirus 3C protease reveals a trypsin-like polypeptide fold, RNA-binding site and means for cleaving precursor polyprotein. *Cell* 77, 761–771

62 Ladomery, M. (1997) Multifunctional proteins suggest connections between transcriptional and post-transcriptional processes. *BioEssays* 19, 903–909

63 Goldberg, J. *et al.* (1995) Three-dimensional structure of the catalytic subunit of protein serine/threonine phosphatase-1. *Nature* 376, 745–753

64 Mumby, M.C. and Walter, G. (1993) Protein serine/threonine phosphatases: structure, regulation and functions in cell growth. *Physiol. Rev.* 73, 673–699

65 Jia, Z. (1997) Protein phosphatases: structures and implications. *Biochem. Cell Biol.* 75, 17–26

66 Holmes, C.F.B. and Boland, M.P. (1993) Inhibitors of protein phosphatase-1 and -2A: two of the major serine/threonine protein phosphatases involved in cellular regulation. *Curr. Opin. Struct. Biol.* 3, 934–943

67 Nemani, R. and Lee, E.Y.C. (1993) Reactivity of sulfhydryl groups of the catalytic subunits of rabbit skeletal muscle protein phosphatases 1 and 2A. *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 300, 24–29

68 Murzin, A.G. *et al.* (1995) Scop: a structural classification of proteins database for the investigation of sequences and structures. *J. Mol. Biol.* 247, 536–540

69 Orengo, C.A. *et al.* (1997) CATH: a hierarchic classification of protein domain structures. *Structure* 5, 1093–1108

70 Lesk, A.M. *et al.* (1989) Structural principles of α/β proteins: the packing of the interior of the sheet. *Proteins Struct. Funct. Genet.* 5, 139–148

71 Farber, G.K. and Petsko, G.A. (1990) The evolution of α/β barrel enzymes. *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 15, 228–234

72 Hegyi, H. and Gerstein, M. (1999) The relationship between protein structure and function: a comprehensive survey with application to the yeast genome. *J. Mol. Biol.* 288, 147–164

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-6

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

Growth Factors, 1995, Vol 12, pp. 1–10
Reprints available directly from the publisher
Photocopying permitted by license only

Interactions Between the Flk-1 Receptor, Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor, and Cell Surface Proteoglycan Identified with a Soluble Receptor Reagent

MING-KO CHIANG and JOHN G. FLANAGAN

Department of Cell Biology, Harvard Medical School, 25 Shattuck Street, Boston, MA 02115, USA

(Received August 9 1994, Accepted November 29 1994)

Fetal liver kinase-1 (Flk-1) is a transmembrane tyrosine kinase that was identified in endothelial cells and populations of cells enriched in hematopoietic progenitors. To characterize the interaction of Flk-1 with potential ligands the receptor extracellular domain was genetically fused to an alkaline phosphatase (AP) tag. A soluble ligand for Flk-1 was identified in the supernatants of numerous mesenchymal cell lines by co-immunoprecipitation with the Flk1-AP fusion protein. This polypeptide was shown by N-terminal sequencing to be vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). Receptor-AP fusion proteins can thus be used to identify soluble ligands as well as transmembrane ligands, and this approach is therefore likely to be widely applicable to many types of orphan receptor. The Flk1-AP soluble receptor was also found to bind to cell surfaces, showing two apparent classes of binding site with different affinities. This interaction could be reconstructed by introducing a VEGF expression plasmid into cells. These results indicate that VEGF presented at the cell surface can bind to the Flk-1 receptor, and could mediate a direct cell-cell interaction. The Flk1-AP fusion protein was also found to bind heparin, implying that ligand binding by the Flk-1 receptor may involve a three way interaction between the Flk-1 receptor, VEGF, and heparin-like cell surface proteoglycans.

KEYWORDS: receptor tyrosine kinase,, heparin, alkaline phosphatase

INTRODUCTION

Cell surface receptors with an intracellular tyrosine kinase domain have powerful effects on proliferation and other aspects of cell behavior. When activated by mutation they can act as potent oncogenes, and they have important roles in normal physiology and development (Schlessinger and Ullrich, 1992). In addition to the receptor tyrosine kinases with known ligands, many additional receptor-like tyrosine kinases without known ligands have been identified, mostly by approaches based on the sequence conservation of the enzymatic tyrosine kinase domain. More than twenty of these orphan receptors are currently without known ligands, and it is likely that the identification of those ligands will make an important contribution to our understanding of cell-cell signaling.

The Flk-1 receptor was identified by polymerase chain reaction of mRNA from populations of mouse fetal liver cells highly enriched for primitive hematopoietic progenitors (Matthews et al., 1991). The Flk-1 receptor, and an apparent human homolog, KDR, was also found to be expressed in vascular endothelial cells (Terman et al., 1991; Millauer et al., 1993; Quinn et al., 1993). Structurally, the Flk-1 receptor has an extracellular region containing seven immunoglobulin-like domains, placing it in a subfamily with two other receptors that show close sequence homology. Those receptors are flt, which was shown to be a receptor for vascular endothelial growth factor (de Vries et al., 1992) and flt-4 (Aprelikova et al., 1992; Galland et al., 1992), a receptor still without a known ligand.

One approach to identifying the ligands of receptor tyrosine kinases is to use the receptor

Corresponding author: J. G. Flanagan, at the above address. Fax: (617) 432-1144.

extracellular domain as a soluble affinity reagent. We have previously described the use of a soluble form of the c-kit receptor for that purpose (Flanagan and Leder, 1990). The receptor extracellular domain was fused to placental alkaline phosphatase, providing the molecule with a tag that binds to available antibodies and also has an intrinsic enzyme activity that can be easily and sensitively traced. This reagent was used to detect the kit ligand as a transmembrane molecule expressed at the cell surface (Flanagan and Leder, 1990). Similar approaches based on soluble receptor fusion proteins have now also been used to identify other transmembrane ligands at the cell surface (for example, Armitage et al., 1992; Lyman et al., 1993).

Here we have applied the soluble receptor approach to the Flk-1 receptor and shown that this approach can be used to identify not only transmembrane ligands, but also ligands that are matrix-associated or soluble. The Flk-1 receptor was found by this approach to bind with high affinity to VEGF, an interaction also described by others (Millauer et al., 1993; Quinn et al., 1993). The interaction was detectable in solution and also when VEGF was present at cell surfaces, where it is bound via cell surface proteoglycan. In addition, the soluble Flk-1 receptor itself was found to bind to heparin-agarose. These results suggest that a three-way functional complex may be formed between the Flk-1 receptor, VEGF, and specific heparin-like molecules at the surface of the ligand-presenting cell.

METHODS

Production of Flk1-AP Fusion Protein

The Flk-1 extracellular region cDNA was amplified by polymerase chain reaction to create a HindIII-BamHI fragment, which was inserted into HindIII-BglII cut APtag-1 vector (Flanagan and Leder, 1990). The resulting Flk1-AP fusion plasmid encodes the entire extracellular domain of Flk-1 joined at Glu-762, via a four amino acid linker (Gly-Ser-Ser-Gly), to the distinctively heat-stable secreted human placental alkaline phosphatase. A plasmid with the same vector sequences encoding unfused secreted alkaline phosphatase (SEAP) (Berger et al., 1988) was also produced for use as a control. Plasmids were linearized with ClaI and transfected with the marker plasmid pSV7neo into NIH-3T3 cells by calcium phosphate precipitation. One day after transfection, cells were distributed into 96-well plates and selected with 400 μg/ml G418. After 2 weeks, approximately 100 clones were screened for secretion of alkaline phosphatase activity by a colorimetric assay as described (Flanagan and Leder, 1990), except that L-homoarginine was omitted from all alkaline phosphatase assays here. Alkaline phosphatase activities are expressed here as OD units per hour (OD/hr), indicating the rate of hydrolysis of the chromogenic substrate p-nitrophenyl phosphate under the conditions used. One picomole of alkaline phosphatase protein corresponded to an activity of approximately 30 OD/hr.

Co-immunoprecipitation with the Flk1-AP Fusion Protein

For analysis of ^{35}S-labeled proteins in supernatants, cells in 10 cm plates were rinsed twice in methionine-free DMEM, then incubated with 200 μCi/ml ^{35}S protein labeling mix (New England Nuclear, NEG-072) in 4 ml of methionine-free DMEM containing 10% dialyzed calf serum. After 8 hr, supernatants were taken and concentrated 10 fold by ultrafiltration. 200 μl of concentrated supernatant was incubated for 90 min at room temperature with an equal volume of conditioned medium containing approximately 5 μg/ml Flk1-AP fusion protein. The Flk1-AP fusion protein was then immunoprecipitated by incubating on a rotator for 60 min with CNBr-Sepharose beads coupled to excess monoclonal antibody against human placental alkaline phosphatase (Cat. no. MIA 1801, Medix Biotech Inc., Foster City, CA) and washing the beads six times in modified RIPA buffer (0.5% NP40, 0.5% NaDOC, 0.025% SDS, 144 mM NaCl, 20 mM Tris-HCl pH 8.0). ^{35}S-labeled proteins were separated on 15% SDS-polyacrylamide gels, which were then fixed, treated with Enlightening (New England Nuclear), dried, and exposed to X-ray film.

To prepare proteins for microsequencing, 200 μl of CNBr-Sepharose was conjugated with 400 μg anti-AP antibody and was then incubated with a saturating amount of Flk1-AP conditioned medium for 1 hr at room temperature. The beads were then washed and treated with the crosslinking agent dimethylpimelimidate (Harlow and Lane, 1988). BMS-12 cells were grown in DMEM containing 1% bovine calf serum for 3 days. One liter of conditioned medium was collected and concentrated to

30 ml by ultrafiltration and was incubated with the 200 μl of Flk1-AP conjugated beads. After 1 hr at room temperature the beads were packed into a column, washed with 4 ml of modified RIPA buffer, 1 ml of 10 mM sodium phosphate pH 6.8, and proteins were then eluted with 1 ml of 100 mM glycine, pH 2.5. The eluted sample was concentrated by TCA precipitation, run on a 15% SDS-polyacrylamide gel, and transferred to a PVDF membrane (Matsudaira, 1987). The band of interest was cut out and gas-phase protein sequencing was performed as described (Tempst and Riviere, 1989).

Quantitative Assays of Flk1-AP Binding to Cell Surfaces or to Heparin Sepharose

Cell surface binding of Flk1-AP was measured essentially as described previously for Kit-AP (Flanagan and Leder, 1990). Plates of cells were washed with HBHA buffer (Hank's balanced salt solution with 1 mg/ml bovine serum albumin, 20 mM HEPES pH 7.0, 0.1% NaN_3) and then incubated for 90 min at room temperature with conditioned medium containing Flk1-AP fusion protein or SEAP protein as a control. For some experiments the conditioned medium was diluted with HBHA buffer. The cells were then rinsed six times with HBHA buffer, lysed, and assayed for alkaline phosphatase activity colorimetrically as described (Flanagan and Leder, 1990). Scatchard analyses of cell surface binding data were performed with the LIGAND program (Munson and Rodbard, 1980).

To test the effect of heparinase on binding of Flk1-AP to the cell surface, cells were incubated in DMEM without serum for 1 hr at 37°C with 0.25 units/ml of heparinase (a gift from Ibex Technologies, Montreal, Canada). To test binding of Flk1-AP to heparin-Sepharose, conditioned medium containing Flk1-AP or SEAP was diluted into 10 ml of 20 mM HEPES pH 7.0, 150 mM NaCl and was loaded onto a 1 ml heparin Sepharose FPLC column (HiTrap column, Pharmacia) by recirculating overnight. Salt gradient elution was performed at a flow rate of 0.5 ml/min with collection of 1 ml fractions.

RESULTS

The Flk1-AP soluble receptor fusion protein used in these studies is illustrated in Fig. 1A. When immunoprecipitated from the supernatant of transfected

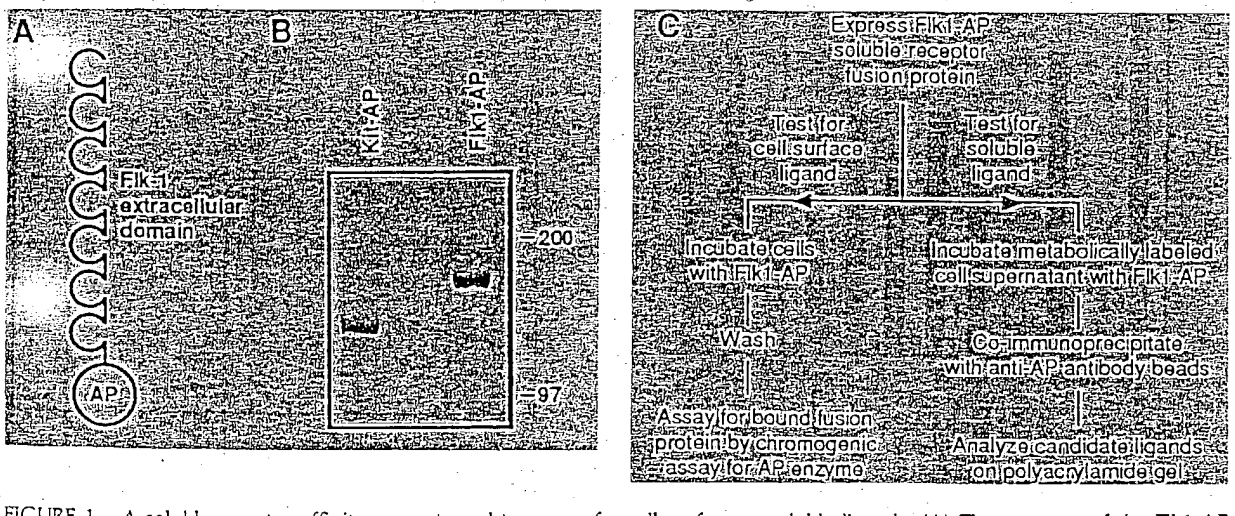


FIGURE 1. A soluble receptor affinity reagent used to screen for cell surface or soluble ligands. (A) The structure of the Flk1-AP soluble receptor fusion protein, consisting of the seven immunoglobulin-like domains of the Flk-1 extracellular region fused to a human placental alkaline phosphatase tag. (B) The Flk1-AP fusion reagent was produced by transfected NIH-3T3 cells as a single major polypeptide of the expected molecular weight. The supernatant of a transfected clone expressing high levels of alkaline phosphatase activity was immunoprecipitated with anti-AP beads and analyzed by electrophoresis on a 6% polyacrylamide gel followed by Coomassie blue staining. A Kit-AP fusion protein is shown for comparison (Flanagan and Leder, 1990). (C) Illustrates the strategy used to perform an initial screen of cell lines for either a cell surface ligand or a soluble ligand. To screen for a cell surface ligand (left side) the cells were treated with Flk1-AP fusion protein, washed and then tested for binding of the soluble receptor by a simple colorimetric assay for bound AP activity. To test for soluble ligand (right side) metabolically labeled supernatants from candidate cell lines were mixed with supernatant containing Flk1-AP fusion protein. The fusion protein, with any bound ligand, was then immunoprecipitated with anti-AP beads, and radiolabeled proteins were analyzed by gel electrophoresis.

cells, the fusion protein appears as a single prominent band with the expected apparent molecular weight of approximately 170 kDa (Fig. 1B). This fusion protein retained alkaline phosphatase enzyme activity, with a specific activity similar to that reported previously (Flanagan and Leder, 1990). Individual clones of transfected cells selected for secretion of high alkaline phosphatase activity produced approximately 5 μg/ml of fusion protein in the supernatant.

The strategy used to screen cell lines for production of a Flk-1 ligand is summarized in Fig. 1C. As Flk-1 was implicated as a receptor that might function in hematopoietic progenitors and endothelial cells, we focused our initial ligand search on mesenchymal cell lines such as bone marrow stromal cells and embryonic fibroblasts, on the basis that such cells might be expected to support the growth of the receptor-bearing cell types. Figure 2 shows the result of a screen for cell surface binding to thirteen cell lines, including ten mouse bone marrow stromal lines (BMS and BMSC lines), one mouse embryonic fibroblast line (STO), one rat liver cell line (BRL 3A) and one mouse macrophage line (P388D1). The cells were treated with Flk1-AP to test for the presence of a candidate ligand and also with unfused SEAP as a control for background binding. In repeated experiments, each of the cell lines tested except P388D1 and BRL 3A showed cell surface binding of Flk1-AP that was several times higher than the SEAP control. Representative results are shown in Fig. 2.

As a biologically significant receptor-ligand interaction is expected to have a reasonably high affinity, a Scatchard analysis of the cell surface binding was performed by carrying out the binding assay with varying amounts of Flk1-AP. The binding data give a nonlinear Scatchard plot consistent with binding to two sites of different affinities on the cell surface (Fig. 3). This is in contrast to other AP tagged soluble receptors, such as the c-kit receptor, which give linear Scatchard plots when tested for binding to their cell surface ligands (Flanagan and Leder, 1990; and unpublished data). The dissociation constants for Flk1-AP binding to the cell surface calculated from repeated experiments were approximately 10^{-10} M for the higher affinity site and

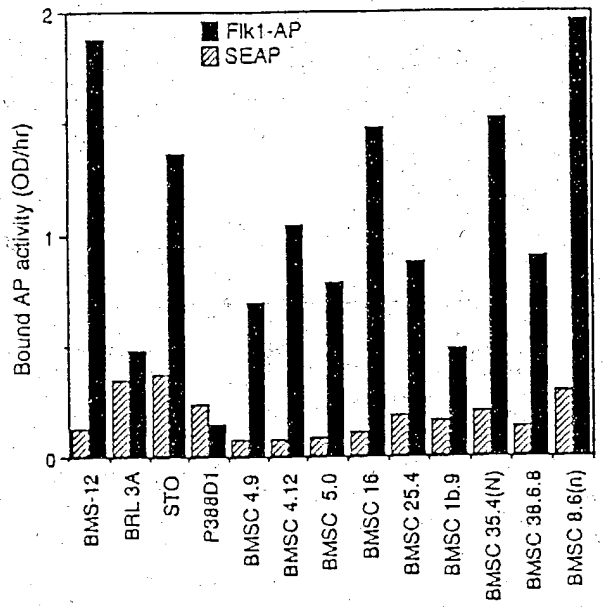


FIGURE 2. Binding of Flk1-AP soluble affinity reagent to the surfaces of cell lines. Cell lines in 10 cm dishes were incubated with 4 ml of conditioned medium containing Flk1-AP or SEAP as a control, each at 600 OD/hr per ml, for 1 hr at room temperature, then the cells were washed and analyzed for bound alkaline phosphatase activity. Cell lines denoted BMS or BMSC are mouse bone marrow stromal lines (M.-K.C., J.G.F., and N. Weich and W. Benjamin, Hoffman LaRoche Inc.), BRL 3A is a rat liver line, STO is a mouse embryo fibroblast line, and P388D1 is a mouse macrophage line.

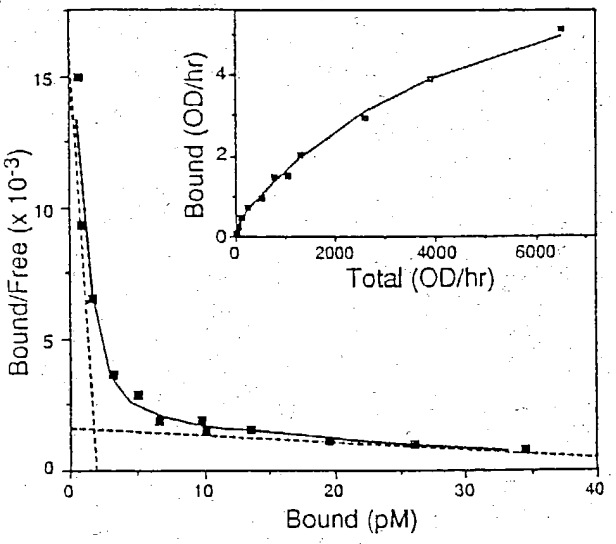


FIGURE 3. Scatchard analysis of Flk1-AP binding to the surface of BMS-12 cells. BMS-12 hematopoietic stromal cells in 10 cm plates were incubated with varying concentrations of Flk1-AP fusion protein in 4 ml of medium, and were then washed and assayed for bound alkaline phosphatase activity. The inset graph shows the measured alkaline phosphatase activities. The same data are shown as a Scatchard plot with a curve calculated for two cell surface binding sites of different affinities. The results of this experiment indicate approximately 170,000 sites per cell with a dissociation constant of 3.5×10^{-8} M and 6000 sites per cell with a dissociation constant of 1.3×10^{-10} M.

approximately 10^{-8} M for the lower affinity site, and the numbers of sites per cell were approximately 5000 and 100,000 respectively (Fig. 3). The dissociation constant of the higher affinity site is similar to recent estimates of the affinity of ^{125}I-labeled VEGF binding to Flk-1 receptor expressed on cell surfaces (Millauer et al., 1993; Quinn et al., 1993).

In parallel with the screen for cell surface ligands, we also screened cell lines for secretion of soluble Flk-1 ligands by a co-immunoprecipitation procedure (Fig. 1C). Two polypeptides with apparent molecular weights of approximately 19 and 23 kDa were detected prominently in supernatants of all the cell lines tested, including those shown in Fig. 4 as well as the 9 additional hematopoietic stromal cell lines described in Fig. 2. These bands were absent from controls where unfused SEAP was substituted for the Flk1-AP fusion protein (Fig. 4A). Experiments where the amount of Flk1-AP fusion protein in the co-immunoprecipitation reaction was varied indicated that the affinity of the soluble receptor for these polypeptides was approximately in the nanomolar range, consistent with a biologically significant receptor-ligand interaction and with the results obtained from the cell surface binding experiments.

The yield of the candidate Flk-1 ligand polypeptides in co-immunoprecipitation experiments was several nanograms per ml of supernatant, as judged by silver staining of gels (data not shown). This implied that amino acid sequence information could be obtained from a moderate amount of conditioned

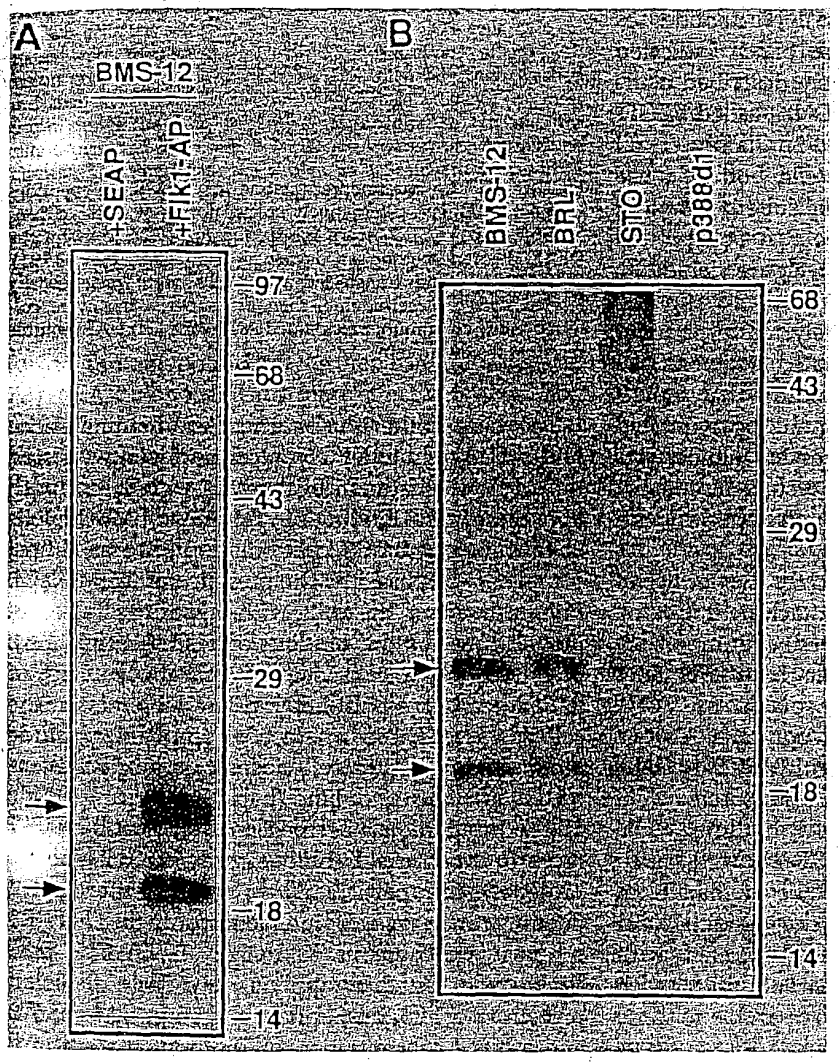


FIGURE 4. Co-immunoprecipitation of candidate ligand polypeptides with Flk1-AP. (A) BMS-12 bone marrow stromal cells were labeled with ^{35}S-methionine, then the supernatant was collected and treated with Flk1-AP fusion protein or SEAP as a control, followed by immunoprecipitation with anti-AP beads. Labeled proteins were then analyzed on a 15% polyacrylamide gel. (B) Supernatants from a variety of cell lines were co-immunoprecipitated with Flk1-AP, including a bone marrow stromal line (BMS-12), a liver cell line (BRL 3A), an embryonic fibroblast (STO), and a macrophage line (P388D1).

medium. One liter of supernatant from the BMS-12 cell line was therefore concentrated and co-immunoprecipitated, yielding approximately 2 μg of each of the candidate ligand polypeptides. After blotting onto a PVDF membrane, the 23 kDa band was subjected to N-terminal peptide microsequencing. The first nine amino acids of the resulting sequence were found to match the N-terminal sequence (APTTEGEQK) predicted from the cDNA of murine VEGF (Breier et al., 1992; Claffey et al., 1992).

To confirm binding of VEGF to the Flk-1 receptor, murine VEGF cDNAs were isolated by polymerase chain reaction (PCR). BMS-12 and two other lines (STO and P388D1) that express the 19 and 23 kDa co-immunoprecipitated polypeptides (Fig. 4) were tested by PCR and were each found to yield two prominent amplified bands visible by agarose gel electrophoresis (data not shown). Nucleotide sequencing of the cDNAs in these bands indicated that they correspond to previously described alternatively spliced forms of VEGF cDNA, called VEGF-1 and VEGF-2 (Breier et al., 1992; Claffey et al., 1992). When expressed in COS cells, both of these cDNAs yielded polypeptides in the supernatant that co-immunoprecipitate with Flk1-AP fusion protein (Fig. 5). The apparent molecular weights yielded by the VEGF-1 and VEGF-2 constructs were approximately 23 and 19 kDa respectively, corresponding in size to the two bands precipitated from BMS-12 (Fig. 5). These results further confirm that the 19 and 23 kDa polypeptides co-immunoprecipitated from BMS-12 and other cell lines are almost certainly VEGF polypeptides. The results also show that the VEGF-1 and VEGF-2 polypeptides both bind to the Flk-1 receptor.

It is known that VEGF can attach to the surface of expressing cells, and that this attachment can be eliminated by herparinase treatment (Ferrara et al., 1992). It therefore seemed possible that the binding of Flk-1AP to cell surfaces is mediated by VEGF associated with cell surface proteoglycans. To test this, COS cells were transfected with VEGF-1 cDNA and tested for Flk1-AP binding. Untransfected COS cells showed low levels of Flk1-AP binding, while cells expressing transfected VEGF showed much higher levels of binding (Fig. 6). Like the data from the BMS-12 stromal cell line, the binding data from the transfected COS cells are consistent with binding to two sites of different affinities, with apparent dissociation constants comparable to those measured for BMS-12 (Fig. 6).

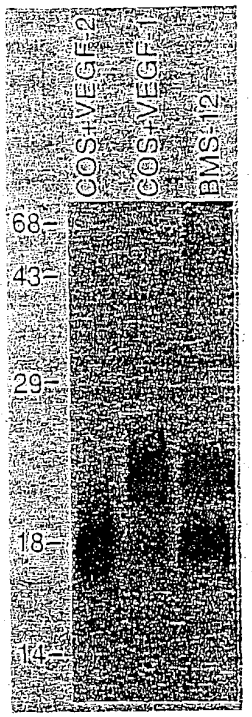


FIGURE 5. Co-immunoprecipitation of VEGF polypeptides with Flk1-AP. Two alternatively spliced forms of VEGF cDNA, VEGF-1 and VEGF-2, were transfected into COS cells by the DEAE dextran method as described (Flanagan et al., 1991). BMS-12 cells and transfected COS cells were metabolically labeled with ^{35}S-methionine, then the supernatants were collected and co-immunoprecipitated with the Flk1-AP soluble receptor fusion protein.

To assess further the nature of the binding of the Flk1-AP protein to VEGF on cell surfaces, we tested the effect of treatment of the cells with salt or with heparinase. The binding of Flk1-AP to BMS-12 cells or to transfected COS cells was found to be almost completely inhibited by the presence of 0.6 M NaCl. Pretreatment of the cells with heparinase also removed most of the binding of Flk1-AP (Fig. 7A). These results are consistent with an involvement of ionic interactions with heparin-like molecules at the cell surface. These interactions probably include binding of VEGF to cell surface proteoglycans, as VEGF is known to bind heparin (Ferrara et al., 1992). In addition it seemed possible that the Flk-1 receptor might itself bind directly to cell surface proteoglycans, particularly in view of the recent demonstration of an interaction of the FGF-R1 receptor with heparin (Kan et al., 1993). This possibility was tested by applying the Flk1-AP fusion protein to a heparin-Sepharose column. At pH 7.0 and a NaCl concentration of 150 mM, the Flk1-AP

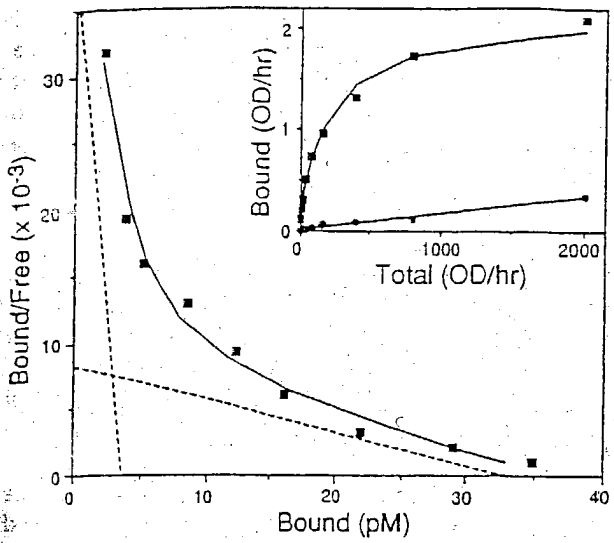


FIGURE 6. Scatchard analysis of Flk1-AP binding to the surface of COS cells transfected with VEGF cDNA. COS cells in 6 cm plates were treated with varying concentrations of Flk1-AP fusion protein in 2 ml of medium. The cells were then washed and assayed for bound alkaline phosphatase activity. The inset graph shows the measured alkaline phosphatase activities for cells transfected with VEGF-1 cDNA (squares) or vector alone (circles). The same data are shown as a Scatchard plot with a curve calculated for two cell surface binding sites of different affinities. The results of this experiment indicate approximately 135,000 sites per cell with a dissociation constant of 1.1×10^{-8} M and 29,000 sites per cell with a dissociation constant of 3.1×10^{-10} M.

fusion protein bound to the heparin column (Fig. 7B). SEAP alone did not bind effectively (Fig. 7B), consistent with the low isoelectric point of placental alkaline phosphatase which would give it a net negative charge at pH 7.0. The Flk1-AP fusion protein was also found not to bind to unconjugated Sepharose (data not shown) indicating that it binds to the heparin moiety of the heparin-Sepharose matrix. Bound Flk1-AP fusion protein was eluted from the heparin-Sepharose column by NaCl concentrations of approximately 0.3 M (Fig. 7B). The interaction of Flk1-AP with the heparin column may be direct or might be mediated by other molecules present in the conditioned medium. However, it is unlikely that the Flk1-AP binding is mediated by VEGF because the Flk1-AP concentration in the conditioned medium is much higher than the expected concentration of VEGF. The results therefore suggest that binding of the Flk-1 receptor extracellular domain to heparin-like molecules may be involved in the formation of a three-way functional complex between the Flk-1 receptor, heparin-like components and VEGF.

DISCUSSION

Flk-1 is one of a large number of receptor tyrosine kinases that were identified by the nucleotide sequence conservation of the kinase domain, but initially had no known ligands. We and others have previously used soluble versions of cell surface receptors to identify ligands that are transmembrane molecules (for example, Flanagan and Leder, 1990; Lyman et al., 1993). However, it has been less clear whether the soluble receptor approach could also be generally applied to ligands that are soluble. Here we have used a receptor-AP fusion protein to identify a soluble ligand for the Flk-1 receptor. The Flk1-AP reagent was used in a co-immunoprecipitation procedure to identify a candidate ligand in the supernatants of numerous mesenchymal cell lines. Co-immunoprecipitation from moderate amounts of supernatant allowed the isolation of a sufficient yield of the ligand for peptide microsequencing, showing that this ligand is VEGF. This growth factor was also shown by others to bind Flk-1 or its human homolog KDR, and was found to activate Flk-1 kinase activity (Terman et al., 1992; Millauer et al., 1993; Quinn et al., 1993). These results support the idea that the soluble receptor affinity approach is likely to be of general utility for the identification and characterization of a wide variety of different types of ligand, whether they are transmembrane, matrix-associated or soluble.

Placental alkaline phosphatase serves as a useful fusion protein tag. The availability of antibodies against placental alkaline phosphatase makes it straightforward to use procedures such as co-immunoprecipitation. Moreover the marker enzyme activity of the tag allows the fusion protein to be traced quantitatively by simple chromogenic assays without the necessity of purification, radioactive labeling, or the use of secondary reagents. We find that detection using the enzyme activity of AP fusion proteins is compatible with a variety of applications including quantitative receptor-ligand binding studies, *in situ* staining for ligands, and library screening. The sensitivity of detection can be at least comparable to other methods, such as the use of purified and ^{125}I labeled reagents (Flanagan and Leder, 1990; Flanagan et al., 1991; Ornitz et al., 1992, this paper, and unpublished data).

VEGF was originally discovered as a secreted polypeptide that affects endothelial cell growth and vascular permeability, and it has been implicated as an important factor in angiogenesis associated with

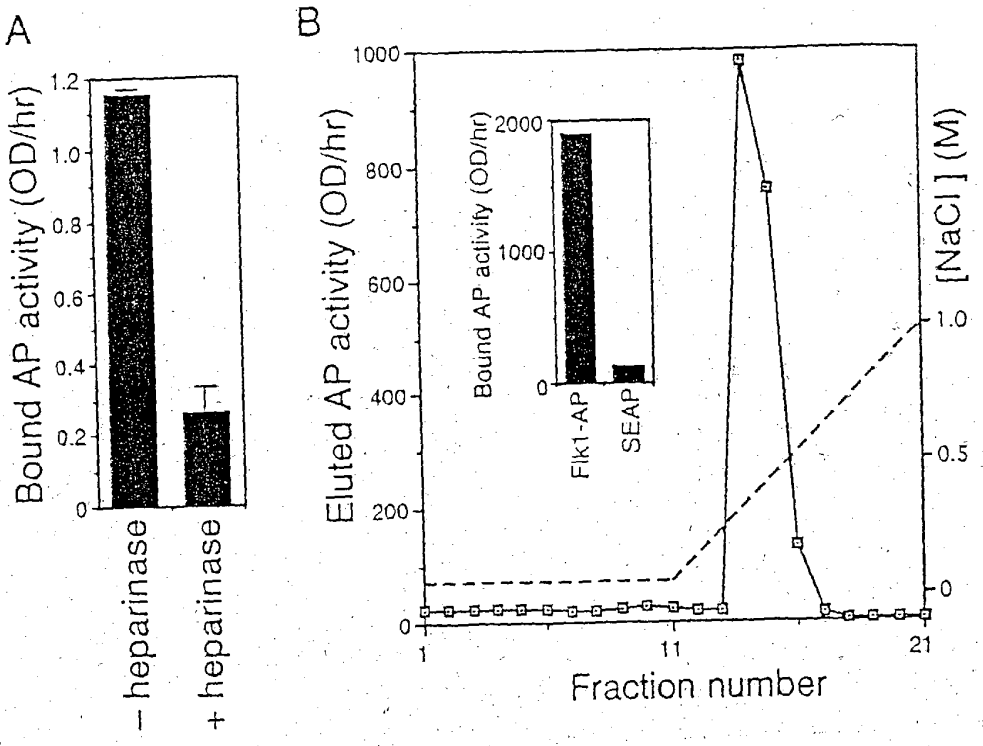


FIGURE 7. Role of heparin-like molecules in the interactions of Flk1-AP. (A) Effect of heparinase on the binding of Flk1-AP to VEGF on cell surfaces. COS cells transfected with VEGF-1 cDNA were incubated with or without heparinase, then were treated with Flk1-AP (500 OD/hr/ml), washed and assayed for bound AP activity. Each bar indicates the mean of two determinations, and the error bars indicate the difference between the two. (B) Binding of Flk1-AP to heparin-Sepharose. Approximately 2500 OD/hr (12.5 μg) of Flk1-AP fusion protein or the same activity of SEAP protein was loaded onto a 1 ml heparin-Sepharose FPLC column. The inset histogram shows total binding of Flk1-AP or SEAP. A salt gradient elution profile of Flk1-AP is also shown (solid line). After Flk1-AP binding the column was washed with 10 ml of buffer containing 50 mM NaCl, and bound proteins were then eluted with a gradient of NaCl (broken line).

both tumor formation and normal development (Folkman and Klagsbrun, 1987; Breier et al., 1992; Claffey et al., 1992; Ferrara et al., 1992; Plate et al., 1992; Shweiki et al., 1992; Kim et al., 1993; Millauer et al., 1993; Quinn et al., 1993; Millauer et al., 1994). In mice, two major alternatively spliced forms of VEGF mRNA and an additional minor form have been identified (Breier et al., 1992; Claffey et al., 1992). In this study we found that Flk-1 binds the protein products of both major alternative spliced forms of VEGF, VEGF-1 and VEGF-2. As Flk-1 is a receptor for VEGF and is expressed in endothelial cells or their progenitors from early stages of development, it is likely that the interaction of VEGF with the Flk-1 receptor has an important role in the control of angiogenesis (Millauer et al., 1993; Quinn et al., 1993; Millauer et al., 1994). The expression of Flk-1 in populations of cells highly enriched for primitive hematopoietic progenitors is also suggestive of possible roles for this receptor in hematopoiesis (Matthews et al., 1991), and could be consistent with the possible existence in the embryonic blood islands of a common progenitor for endothelial cells and hematopoietic stem cells (Risau, 1991).

Receptor-ligand interactions are typically studied at the surface of the receptor-bearing cell, although the interactions of receptors, growth factors and accessory molecules at the surface of the ligand-presenting cell may also be an important determinant of biological activity. The use of soluble receptor fusion proteins, as described here, allows a characterization of such interactions. We find that the soluble Flk-1 receptor binds VEGF-1 on the surfaces of expressing cells, without treatment to release the factor into solution. These results indicate that when VEGF is associated with proteoglycans or other molecules at the surface of the expressing cell, it is not sequestered from direct

binding to its receptor and is thus likely to be capable of mediating a direct cell-cell interaction. Interestingly, the binding of soluble Flk-1 to VEGF on the cell surface produces a non-linear Scatchard plot consistent with binding to two classes of site with different affinities. This could be due to an involvement of heparin-like molecules in the interaction. For example one model would be that the lower affinity site could represent a simple interaction between VEGF and Flk-1 only, while the higher affinity site could be produced by a further stabilization of this complex by heparin-like molecules interacting with both VEGF and Flk-1. Further support for this model comes from the finding that the soluble Flk-1 receptor can itself bind to heparin, suggesting the possibility of a direct interaction between the Flk-1 receptor and heparin-like molecules at the cell surface or in extracellular matrix. This model is also consistent with a recent report showing that the interaction of soluble VEGF and Flk-1 can be modulated by soluble heparin (Tessler et al., 1994).

Our results suggest that there may be some cell type specificity in the ability to present VEGF. For example, the P388D1 and BRL 3A cell lines were found to express VEGF polypeptides, but little or no Flk1-AP fusion protein bound to the surface of those cell lines. Specific cell surface proteoglycans may therefore be required to present VEGF on the cell surface. In this regard, it is of interest that the P388D1 line was recently shown to express a specific subset of cell surface proteoglycans (Yeaman and Rapraeger, 1993). Specific interactions with accessory proteoglycans might play an important role in modulating the activity of VEGF and could represent potential targets for therapeutic intervention.

In several respects VEGF is similar to basic fibroblast growth factor. They are both heparin binding growth factors and have angiogenic activity *in vitro* and *in vivo* (Folkman and Klagsbrun, 1987; Ferrara et al., 1992; Plate et al., 1992; Shweiki et al., 1992; Kim et al., 1993; Millauer et al., 1994). Heparin-like molecules are known to promote high affinity functional binding between both factors and their receptors (Klagsbrun and Baird, 1991; Rapraeger et al., 1991; Yayon et al., 1991; Bernfield et al., 1992; Gitay-Goren et al., 1992; Ornitz et al., 1992). A receptor-heparin interaction was observed here for Flk-1, and has also been reported for the fibroblast growth factor receptor FGF-R1 (Kan et al., 1993). The specific spatial localization of angiogenic factors on the cell surface or extracellular matrix and the effect of such interactions on the ability of their receptors to recognize these factors may play important roles in the control of angiogenesis.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Melissa Saylor and John Rush of the Harvard Medical School Biopolymers Facility for protein microsequencing, and William Benjamin of Hoffman LaRoche, Inc., Nutley, NJ for the BMSC cell lines. This work was supported by grant numbers DK45580 and HD29417 from the National Institutes of Health, and a grant from Hoffman-LaRoche, Inc.

REFERENCES

Aprelikova, O., Pajusola, K., Partanen, J., Armstrong, E., Alitalo, R., Bailey, S. K., McMahon, J., Wasmuth, J., Huebner, K. and Alitalo, K. (1992) Flt4, a noval class III receptor tyrosine kinase in chromosome 5q33-qter. *Cancer Res.* 52, 746–748.

Armitage, R. J., Fanslow, W. C., Strockbine, L., Sato, T. A., Clifford, K. N., Macduff, B. M., Anderson, D. M., Gimpel, S. D., Davis-Smith, T., Maliszewski, C. R., Clark, E. A., Smith, C. A., Grabstein, K. H., Cosman, D. and Spriggs, M. K. (1992) Molecular and biological characterization of a murine ligand for CD40. *Nature* 357, 80–82.

Berger, J., Hauber, J., Hauber, R., Geiger, R. and Cullen, B. R. (1988) Secreted placental alkaline phosphatase: a powerful new quantitative indicator of gene expression in eukaryotic cells. *Gene* 66, 1–10.

Bernfield, M. Kokenyesi, R., Kato, M., Hinkes, M. T., Spring, J., Gallo, R. L. and Lose, E. J. (1992) Biology of the syndecans: A family of transmembrane heparan sulfate proteoglycans. *Annu. Rev. Cell Biol.* 8, 365–393.

Breier, G., Albrecht, U., Sterrer, S. and Risau, W. (1992) Expression of vascular endothelial growth factor during embryonic angiogenesis and endothelial cell differentiation. *Development* 114, 521–532.

Claffey, K. P., Wilkison, W. O. and Spiegelman, B. M. (1992) Vascular endothelial growth factor. Regulation by cell differentiation and activated second messenger pathways. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267, 16317–16322.

de Vries, C., Escobedo, J. A., Ueno, H., Houck, K., Ferrara, N. and Williams, L. T. (1992) The *fms*-like tyrosine kinase, a receptor for vascular endothelial growth factor. *Science* 255, 989–991.

Ferrara, N., Houck, K., Jakeman, L. and Leung, D. W. (1992) Molecular and biological properties of the vascular endothelial growth factor family of proteins. *Endocrine Rev.* 13, 18–32.

Flanagan, J. G., Chan, D. C. and Leder, P. (1991) Transmembrane form of the kit ligand growth factor is determined by alternative splicing and is missing in the Sl^d mutant. *Cell* 64, 1025–1035.

Flanagan, J. G. and Leder, P. (1990) The *kit* ligand: a cell surface molecule altered in Steel mutant fibroblasts. *Cell* 63, 185–194.

Folkman, J. and Klagsbrun, M. (1987) Angiogenic factors. *Science* 235, 442–447.

Galland, F., Karamysheva, A, Mattei, M.-G., Rosnet, O., Marchetto, S. and Birnbaum, D. (1992) Chromosomal localization of flt4, a noval receptor-type tyrosine kinase gene. *Genomics* 13, 475–478.

Gitay-Goren, H., Soker, S., Vlodavsky, I and Neufeld, G. (1992)

The binding of vascular endothelial growth factor to its receptor is dependent on cell surface-associated heparin-like molecules. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267, 6093–6098.

Harlow, E. and Lane, D. (1988) *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, New York.

Kan, M., Wang, F., Xu, J., Crabb, J. W., Hou, J. and Mckeehan, W. L. (1993) An essential heparin-binding domain in the fibroblast growth factor receptor kinase. *Science* 259, 1918–1921.

Kim, K. J., Li, B., Winer, J., Armanini, M., Gillett, N., Phillips, H. S. and Ferrara, N. (1993) Inhibition of vascular endothelial growth factor-induced angiogenesis suppresses tumour growth *in vivo*. *Nature* 362, 841–844.

Klagsbrun, M. and Baird, A. (1991) A dual receptor system is required for basic fibroblast growth factor activity. *Cell* 67, 229–231.

Lyman, S. D., James, L., Bos, T. V., Vries, P., Brasel, K., Gliniak, B., Hollingsworth, L. T., Picha, K. S., McKenna, H. J., Splett, R. R., Fletcher, F. A., Maraskovsky, E., Farrah, T., Foxworthe, D., Williams, D E and Beckmann, M. P. (1993) Molecular cloning of a ligand for the flt3/flk-2 tyrosine kinase receptor: a proliferative factor for primitive hematopoietic cells. *Cell* 75, 1157–1167.

Matsudaira, P. (1987) Sequence from picomole quantities of proteins electroblotted onto polyvinylidene difluoride membranes. *J. Biol. Chem.* 262, 10035–10038.

Matthews, W., Jordan, C. T., Gavin, M., Jenkins, N. A., Copeland, N. G. and Lemischka, I. R. (1991) A receptor tyrosine kinase cDNA isolated from a population of enriched primitive hematopoietic cells and exhibiting close genetic linkage to c-*kit*. *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* 88, 9026–9030.

Millauer, B., Shawver, L. K., Plate, K. H., Risau, W. and Ullrich, A. (1994) Glioblastoma growth inhibited *in vivo* by a dominant-negative Flk-1 mutant. *Nature* 367, 576–579.

Millauer, B., Wizigmann-Voos, S., Schnürch, H., Martinez, R., Møller, N. P. H., Risau, W. and Ullrich, A. (1993) High affinity vegf binding and developmental expression suggest flk-1 as a major regulator of vasculogenesis and angiogenesis. *Cell* 72, 835–846.

Munson, P. J. and Rodbard, D. (1980) LIGAND: a versatile computerized approach for characterization of ligand-binding systems. *Anal. Biochem.* 107, 220–239.

Ornitz, D. M., Yayon, A., Flanagan, J. G., Svahn, C. M., Levi, E. and Leder, P. (1992) Heparin is required for cell-free binding of basic fibroblast growth factor to a soluble receptor and for mitogenesis in whole cells. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 12, 240–247.

Plate, K. H., Breier, G., Weich, H. A. and Risau, W. (1992) Vascular endothelial growth factor is a potential tumour angiogenesis factor in human gliomas *in vivo*. *Nature* 359, 845–848.

Quinn, T. P., Peters, K. G., Vries, C. D., Ferrara, N. and Williams, L. T. (1993) Fetal liver kinase 1 is a receptor for vascular endothelial growth factor and is selectively expressed in vascular endothelium. *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA* 90, 7533–7537.

Rapraeger, A. C., Krufka, A. and Olwin, B. B. (1991) Requirement of heparan sulfate for bFGF-mediated fibroblast growth and myoblast differentiation. *Science* 252, 1705–1707.

Risau, W. (1991) Embryonic angiogenesis factors. *Pharmac. Ther.* 51, 371–376.

Schlessinger, J. and Ullrich, A. (1992) Growth factor signaling by receptor tyrosine kinases. *Neuron* 9, 383–391.

Shweiki, D., Itin, A., Soffer, D. and Keshet, E. (1992) Vascular endothelial growth factor induced by hypoxia may mediate hypoxia-initiated angiogenesis. *Nature* 359, 843–845.

Tempst, P. and Riviere, L. (1989) Examination of automated polypeptide sequencing using standard phenyl isothiocyanate reagent and subpicomole high-performance liquid chromatographic analysis. *Anal. Biochem.* 183, 290–300.

Terman, B. I., Carrion, M. E., Kovacs, E., Rasmussen, B. A., Eddy, R. L. and Shows, T. B. (1991) Identification of a new endothelial cell growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase. *Oncogene* 6, 1677–1683.

Terman, B. I., Dougher-Vermazen, M., Carrion, M. E., Dimitrov, D., Armellino, D. C., Gospodarowicz, D. and Böhlen, P. (1992) Identification of the KDR tyrosine kinase as a receptor for vascular endothelial cell growth factor. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 187, 1579–1586.

Tessler, S., Rockwell, P., Hicklin, D., Cohen, T., Levi, B.-Z., Witte, L., Lemischka, I. R. and Neufeld, G. (1994) Heparin modulates the interaction of VEGF165 with soluble and cell associated *flk-1* receptors. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269, 12456–12461.

Yayon, A., Klagsbrun, M., Esko, J. D., Leder, P. and Ornitz, D. M. (1991) Cell surface, heparin-like molecules are required for binding of basic fibroblast growth factor to its high affinity receptor. *Cell* 64, 841–848.

Yeaman, C. and Rapraeger, A. C. (1993) Membrane-anchored proteoglycans of mouse macrophages: P388D1 cells express a syndecan-4-like heparan sulfate proteoglycan and a distinct chondroitin sulfate form. *J. Cell. Physiol.* 157, 413–425.

AUSTRALIA

Patents Act 1990

IN THE MATTER OF Australian Patent Application Serial No. 696764 by Human Genome Sciences, Inc.

-and-

IN THE MATTER OF Opposition thereto by Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research

THIS IS Exhibit PAWR-7

referred to in the Statutory Declaration

of Peter Adrian Walton Rogers

made before me

DATED this 12th Day of November, 2001

(Signature of Witness)

Medical Practitioner

File History
U.S. Patent No. 6,221,839
Issued April 24, 2001

1. Application as filed
   8/1/95

2. Information Disclosure Statement
   11/3/95

3. Notice to File Missing Parts
   11/20/95

4. Response to Notice to File Missing Parts
   12/19/95

5. Restriction Requirement
   5/29/96

6. Election with Traverse in Response to Restriction Requirement
   7/24/96

7. Preliminary Amendment
   8/12/96

8. Office Action
   9/10/96

9. Request for Amendment of Drawing
   2/10/97

10. Amendment and Reply Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. §1.111 and 1.115
    2/10/97

11. Statement Claiming Small Entity Status
    3/27/97

12. Information Disclosure Statement
    4/10/97

13. Final Office Action
    4/11/97

14. Amendment After Final Action
    6/11/97

15. Suspension of Prosecution
    6/24/97

16. Status Inquiry
    12/29/97

17. Transmittal of Powers of Attorney
    2/24/98

18. Communication in Response to Status Inquiry
    4/3/98

19. Supplemental Information Disclosure Statement
    10/26/99

20. Office Action
    4/26/00

21. Office Action
    6/29/00

22. Amendment and Reply Pursuant to 37 C.F. R. 1.111
    7/24/00

23. Amendment and Statement Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. 1.825
    8/22/00

24. Notice of Allowability

25. Notice of Allowance and Issue Fee Due
    10/3/00

26. Change of Address
    11/2/00

27. Amendment After Allowance
    1/3/01

28. Transmittal of Formal Drawings/Issue Fee Transmittal
    1/3/01